AL-BAHER

CONNECT PLUS 5

Second Term

Parents' Guide



Primary

5

Name : ....

Class : ....

School: ....

Contents

Unit 5

Hobbies and free-time activities

هوايات وأنشطة وقت الفراغ



In this unit, the students will ...

• talk about hobbies and free-time activities.	يتحدث عن الهوايات وأنشطة وقت الفراغ.
• identify, understand, and use verbs + -ing.	يتعرف على ويفهم ويستخدم verbs + ing
• use pie charts to make comparisons.	يستخدم الرسوم البيانية الدائرية لإجراء مقارنات.
• read and understand a poem about hobbies.	يقرأ ويفهم قصيدة عن الهوايات.
• learn about free-time activities in Ancient Egypt.	يتعرف على أنشطة وقت الفراغ في مصر القديمة.
• write an email to a friend.	يكتب بريد اليكتروني إلى صديق.
• read and understand a story about a camping trip.	يقرأ ويفهم قصة عن رحلة تخييم.

Lesson (1) FAVORITE SPORTS AND HOBBIES

Listen and say.

Sports & hobbies رياضات و هوايات



swimming
السباحة



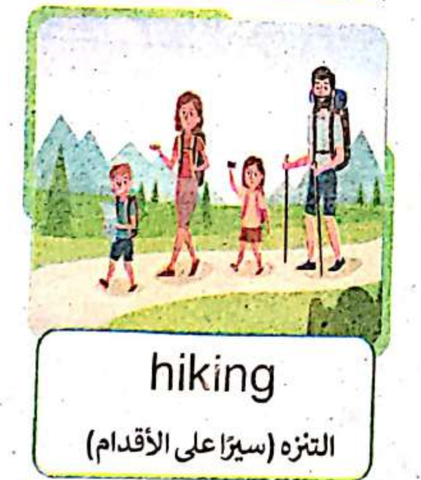
football
كرة القدم



camping
التخييم "إقامة معسكر"



skiing
التزحلق على الجليد



hiking
التنزه (سيرًا على الأقدام)



origami
فن طي وتشكيل الورق



picnic
نزهة خلوية في الهواء الطلق

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

(1)



Extra vocabulary

hobbies	هوايات	weather	الطقس	green spaces	مساحات خضراء
popular	شائع/محبوب	team sport	رياضة جماعية	magazine	مجلة
trip	رحلة قصيرة	sports	رياضات	sunscreen	كريم واقي من الشمس
indoors	بالداخل	strong	قوي	around the world	حول العالم
Siwa Oasis			واحة سيوة	kids	أطفال



Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
play	يلعب	played	played
record	يسجل	recorded	recorded
rain	تمطر	rained	rained
use	يستخدم	used	used

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
meet	يقابل	met	met
make	يصنع	made	made
put	يضع	put	put

Important expressions and prepositions

go hiking	يتنزه (سيرًا على الأقدام)	record a video	يسجل فيديو
go skiing	يذهب للتزلج على الجليد	play video games	يلعب ألعاب كمبيوتر
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة خلوية في الهواء الطلق	go swimming	يذهب للسباحة
go camping	يذهب للتخييم	play sports	يلعب رياضة
put on sunscreen	يضع كريم واقي من الشمس	make new friends	يكوّن صداقات جديدة
put up a tent	ينصب خيمة	look at the stars	ينظر إلى النجوم
free time	وقت فراغ	Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية
do arts and crafts	يقوم بأعمال فنية وحرف يدوية	tell stories	يحكي قصص

Did you know?

People who have hobbies are happier and more relaxed. Hobbies can also make you more creative.

الأشخاص الذين لديهم هوايات يكونوا أكثر سعادة واسترخاء. يمكن أن تجعلك الهوايات أيضًا أكثر إبداعًا.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

- What free-time activities do these children like?

KIDS CLUB MAGAZINE

Hobbies around the world

الهوايات حول العالم

We asked children around the world to answer the question, "What do you do in your free time?" Here are some of their answers.

طلبنا من الأطفال حول العالم الإجابة على هذا السؤال" ماذا تفعل في وقت فراغك؟"وها هي بعض إجاباتهم.

Amir



Egypt

Many sports are popular in my country, but the most popular sport is football. I play football with my friends on a team. The only problem is that the sun is very strong here in Cairo. So, I always put on sunscreen before I play a football match. For me, the best part about playing a team sport is when I make new friends. That's how I met my best friend, Fares. We met playing football.

العديد من الألعاب الرياضية تحظى بشعبية في بلدي ، ولكن الرياضة الأكثر شعبية هي كرة القدم. ألعب كرة القدم مع أصدقائي في فريق. المشكلة الوحيدة هي أن الشمس قوية جدًا هنا في القاهرة. لذلك، أضع دائمًا كريم واقي من أشعة الشمس قبل أن ألعب مباراة كرة قدم. بالنسبة لي أفضل شيء في ممارسة الرياضة الجماعية هو عندما أكوّن صداقات جديدة. هذه هي الطريقة التي التقيت بها أفضل صديق لي، فارس. لقد التقينا عند لعب كرة القدم.

Sofie



Norway

People in my country like to spend their free time outside, and I do, too. My family and I go camping a lot in the summer, so it's very important to know how to put up a tent! The weather can change very fast in Norway, and you don't want to get wet - especially if it's cold out. We also go hiking all summer, and then in the winter, we go skiing down the mountains. I feel very happy when I spend time in the mountains.

الناس في بلدي يحبون قضاء وقت فراغهم خارج المنزل، وأنا كذلك. أذهب أنا وعائلتي للتخييم كثيرًا في الصيف، لذلك من المهم جدًا أن تعرف كيف تنصب خيمة! يمكن أن يتغير الطقس بسرعة كبيرة في النرويج، ولا تريد أن تبتل - خاصة إذا كان الجو باردًا بالخارج. نذهب أيضًا للمشي لمسافات طويلة طوال الصيف، ثم في الشتاء نذهب للتزلج على الجبال. أشعر بالسعادة عندما أقضي الوقت في الجبال.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Lesson (1)

Emily



Canada

There are a lot of different ways that people spend their free time here in Canada. When it's warm out, people have a picnic in the park. We have a lot of green spaces in my city, but the only problem is that it rains a lot. So, when it's raining, I go swimming. The pool is indoors so we don't have to worry about the rain or even the very cold winters which we have here.

هناك الكثير من الطرق المختلفة التي يقضي بها الناس أوقات فراغهم هنا في كندا. عندما يكون الجو دافئًا، يقضي الناس نزهة في الهواء الطلق في الحديقة. لدينا الكثير من المساحات الخضراء في مدينتي ، لكن المشكلة الوحيدة هي أنها تمطر كثيرًا. لذلك، عندما تمطر، أذهب للسباحة. حمام السباحة في الداخل لذلك لا داعي للقلق بشأن المطر أو حتى الشتاء البارد جدًا الذي لدينا هنا.

Daniel



Colombia

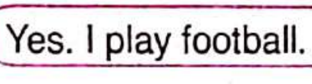
I don't have a lot of free time because I am very busy with my schoolwork. But when I do have free time, I do arts and crafts. Do you know origami? This is a craft which is from Japan, and you use paper to make the shapes of animals, space rockets, or almost anything. It's not very popular here in Colombia where I live, but my friends and I like it a lot. Sometimes we record a video and post it online to show other people how to make our favorite origami animals.

ليس لدي الكثير من وقت الفراغ لأنني مشغول جدًا بعملي المدرسي. لكن عندما يكون بالفعل لدي وقت فراغ ، أقوم بالأعمال الفنية والحرف اليدوية. هل تعرف فن طي وتشكيل الورق؟ هذه حرفة من اليابان ، ويمكنك استخدام الورق لتكوين أشكال حيوانات، الصواريخ الفضائية ، أو أي شيء تقريبًا. إنها ليست شعبية جدًا هنا في كولومبيا حيث أعيش ، لكن أنا وأصدقائي نحب ذلك كثيرًا. في بعض الأحيان نقوم بتسجيل مقطع فيديو وننشره على الإنترنت لنبيّن للآخرين كيفية طي وتشكيل الحيوانات المفضلة لدينا من الورق.

Ask and answer.



Do you play sports? Which one?







Do sports make you stronger or healthier? How?

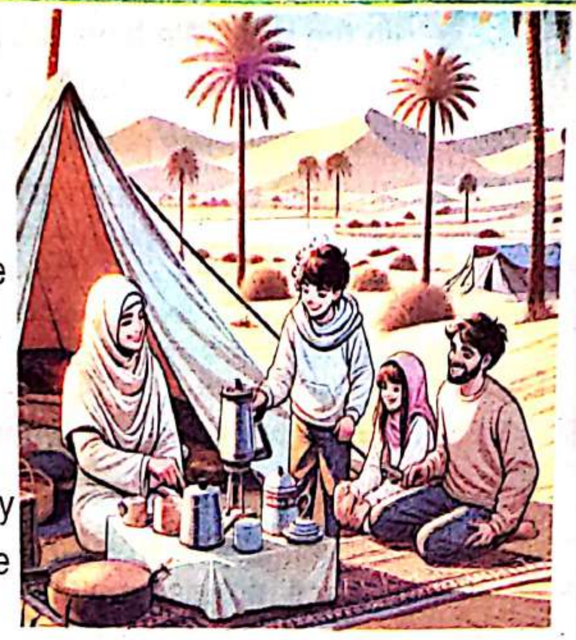




Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Listen and read.



Hi, my name's Seleem. Every year, my family go camping in the Siwa Oasis in the Western Desert. This year, I recorded a video of our trip for the first time. It's really hot in the desert, so we always put on sunscreen during the day! My little sister likes to help Dad put up the tent ... but she can't do it. She's only four! We sometimes go hiking in the early morning because it's cooler. There are also places where we can go swimming. We always take a lot of water to drink and we usually have a picnic for lunch. In the evening, we cook dinner on a fire. This is my favorite part of the day. I like looking at the stars in the night sky while Dad tells us stories. It's fun!

مرحبًا ، اسمي سليم. كل عام، عائلتي تذهب للتخييم في واحة سيوة في الصحراء الغربية. هذا العام ، سجلت مقطع فيديو لرحلتنا لأول مرة. الصحراء شديدة الحرارة حقًا ، لذلك نضع دائمًا كريم واقي من الشمس خلال النهار! تحب أختي الصغيرة مساعدة والدي في إقامة الخيمة لكنها لا تستطيع أن تفعل ذلك. عمرها أربع سنوات فقط! نذهب في بعض الأحيان للمشي لمسافات طويلة في الصباح الباكر لأنه أكثر برودة. هناك أيضًا أماكن يمكننا الذهاب للسباحة فيها. نحن دائمًا نأخذ الكثير من الماء للشرب ، وعادة ما يكون لدينا نزهة لتناول طعام الغداء. في المساء، نحن نطبخ العشاء على النار. هذا هو الجزء المفضل لديَّ من اليوم. أحب النظر إلى النجوم في السماء ليلًا بينما يحكي لنا أبي قصصًا. إنها متعة!

Read again and answer the questions.

1. Where does Seleem's family go camping every year?

....

2. What did Seleem do for the first time this year?

....

3. Who wants to help Dad put up the tent?

....

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



Listen and answer the questions.

1. What's the most popular sport?

....

2. Who do you play football with?

....

3. What do you put on before you play a football match?

....

4. Who is your best friend?

....

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

hiking - camping - put up - weather - sports

People in Norway like to spend their free time outside and I do, too. My family and I go 1).............................. a lot in summer, so it's very important to know how to 2).............................. a tent. The 3).............................. can change very fast in Norway, and you don't want to get wet. We also go 4)...................... all summer.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hi, my name's Seleem. Every year, my family go camping in the Siwa Oasis in the Western Desert. This year, I recorded a video of our trip for the first time. It's really hot in the desert, so we always put on sunscreen during the day! My little sister likes to help Dad put up the tent, but she can't do it. She's only four! We sometimes go hiking in the early morning because it's cooler. There are also places where we can go swimming. We always take a lot of water to drink and we usually have a picnic for lunch. In the evening, we cook dinner on a fire. This is my favorite part of the day. I like looking at the stars in the night sky while Dad tells us stories. It's fun!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is ....

a) free-time activities b) sports c) food d) environment

2. The underlined pronoun "she" refers to Seleem's..............................

   a) mother   b) sister   c) aunt   d) grandma

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Seleem's family go camping every year?..............................

4. Why do they go hiking in the early morning? ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Amir likes to ______________ sports in his free time.

   a) play   b) go   c) have   d) make

2. He puts______________ sunscreen before he plays a football game.

   a) at   b) of   c) in   d) on

3. Sofie and her family go ______________ in the summer.

   a) sports   b) sunscreen   c) camping   d) tent

4. They go ______________ in the mountains in the winter.

   a) picnic   b) videos   c) sports   d) skiing

5. People in Canada like to ______________ a picnic.

   a) go   b) have   c) has   d) had

6. Daniel and his friends ______________ arts and crafts like origami.

   a) does   b) do   c) have   d) make

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. met - Amir - his - playing - friend - football - best - .

....

2. you - put - a - Can - tent - up - ?

....

3. do - What - you - free - time - activities - do - your - in - ?

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite sports and hobbies

Guiding elements:

(free time - play football - put on sunscreen - make new friends)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2) I LIKE GOING TO THE BEACH

Key vocabulary

blog	مدونة إلكترونية	adventure	مغامرة	newspaper	جريدة
free time	وقت فراغ	different	مختلف	market	سوق
favorite	مفضّل	together	معًا / سويًا	outside	بالخارج
mountain	جبل				

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
like	يحب	liked	liked
love	يحب	loved	loved
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	enjoyed
hate	يكره	hated	hated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
send	يرسل	sent	sent
put	يضع	put	put
read	يقرأ	read	read
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten

Important expressions and prepositions

for example	على سبيل المثال	for breakfast	على الإفطار
stay home	يبقى في المنزل	on vacation	في الإجازة
the same age	نفس العمر	wait for the bus	ينتظر الأتوبيس
have dinner	يتناول العشاء	on the beach	على الشاطئ
put ... on ...	يضع ... على		

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read the blogs.

I'm Amira and I love having free time because I can do my favorite things. For example, my family and I enjoy spending time outside. My mom, dad, and I love going hiking in the mountains and the desert. We like going to the beach, too. I love going swimming, but my mom doesn't like swimming and always reads a book at the beach. Sometimes my mom and I record a video at the beach to send to my grandparents. They love seeing our adventures. We sometimes have a picnic together at the beach, too. My brother is different. He hates going to the beach so he doesn't usually come with us. And he doesn't like going camping with us. He's 22 and he has a job, but he enjoys staying home and reading a book or watching a movie.

أنا أميرة وأحب أن يكون لديَّ وقت فراغ لأنني أستطيع أن أفعل الأشياء المفضلة لدي. على سبيل المثال، أنا وعائلتي نستمتع بقضاء وقت الفراغ بالخارج. أمي و أبي وأنا نحب التنزه لمسافات طويلة في الجبال والصحراء. ونحب الذهاب إلى الشاطئ أيضًا. أحب الذهاب للسباحة، ولكن أمي لا تحب السباحة وتقرأ دائمًا كتابًا على الشاطئ. أحيانًا أمي وأنا نسجل فيديو على الشاطئ لإرساله إلى أجدادي. إنهم يحبون رؤية مغامراتنا. أحيانًا نتنزه على الشاطئ أيضًا. أخي مختلف. عادةً يكره الذهاب إلى الشاطئ لذلك لا يذهب عادة معنا. وهو لا يحب الذهاب للتخييم معنا. عمره ٢٢ عامًا ولديه وظيفة ، لكنه يستمتع بالبقاء في المنزل ويقرأ كتابًا أو يشاهد فيلمًا.

I'm Younis and I love spending my free time with my cousins. I'm ten, my cousin Maged is nine, and his brother Waleed is 11. We enjoy doing a lot of different things together because we're almost the same age. For example, we love playing computer games on Saturday. We also like having dinner together. My parents usually take us to have a burger. I have mine with everything on it, but my cousins don't have any onions - they hate eating onions on their burgers. Sometimes my aunt and uncle take us to have ice cream. I love eating ice cream, but I don't like putting chocolate on my ice cream. My cousins love putting chocolate on theirs!

أنا يونس وأحب قضاء وقت فراغي مع أبناء عمي. أنا في العاشرة من عمري، ابن عمي ماجد في التاسعة من عمره وشقيقه وليد يبلغ ١١ عامًا. نستمتع بعمل الكثير من الأشياء المختلفة معًا لأننا تقريبًا في نفس العمر. على سبيل المثال ، نحب أن نلعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر يوم السبت. نحن نحب أيضًا تناول العشاء معًا. والداي عادةً يأخذونا لتناول البرجر. أتناول البرجر الخاص بي مع كل شيء ، ولكن أبناء عمي لا يحبون البصل-فهم يكرهون أكل البصل مع البرجر. أحيانًا عمتي وعمي يأخذونا لتناول الآيس كريم. أنا أحب تناول الآيس كريم، لكني لا أحب وضع الشوكولاتة على الآيس كريم. أبناء عمي يحبون وضع الشوكولاتة على الأيس كريم!

Help your child listen and read the blogs.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ مدونات.



verb + ing

Subject (فاعل) + (like / love / enjoy hate / don't like / dislike) + verb (فعل) + ing

Affirmative

⇨ I like spending time outside.

⇨ We enjoy going to the beach, too.

⇨ They hate eating onions on their burger.

Negative

⇨ I don't like drawing.

⇨ He doesn't enjoy swimming.

⇨ The cat doesn't hate eating meat.

Spelling rules

If a verb ends in a (consonant + e), we take away the (e) and add (-ing).

إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (e) يسبقها حرف ساكن نحذف (e) ثم نضيف (ing).

have ⇨ having | take ⇨ taking | dance ⇨ dancing

If a verb ends in a (a vowel then a consonant), we write the last letter twice and add (-ing).

إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بحرف ساكن يسبقه متحرك نضعّف الحرف الساكن ثم نضيف (ing-).

put ⇨ putting | swim ⇨ swimming

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Her mom doesn't like ....
   a) swim b) swims c) swimming d) swam
2. He loves .... computer games.
   a) play b) plays c) played d) playing
3. I enjoy .... time outside.
   a) spending b) spend c) spends d) spent
4. We like .... to the beach, too.
   a) goes b) going c) go d) went
5. I don't like .... chocolate on my ice cream.
   a) put b) puts c) has put d) putting

2 Correct the verbs between brackets.

1. My dad loves .... (read) books in his free time.
2. Talia enjoys .... (play) sports after school.
3. Hany hates .... (do) arts and crafts.
4. I don't like .... (put) up a tent.

3 Read and match.

1.	I love playing	a.	ful medames for breakfast.
2.	I don't like drinking	b.	in the sea on vacation.
3.	At home, we enjoy having	c.	emails on my phone.
4.	Talia and Lama like doing	d.	video games with my friends.
5.	We love swimming	e.	arts and crafts after school.
6.	I hate writing	f.	tea or coffee.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( ) 5-( ) 6-( )

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Why does Amira love having free time?

....

2. Where do Amira and her family go hiking?

....

3. What doesn't mom like?

....

4. Where does mom like reading a book?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

computer games - cousins - age - dinner - hiking

I'm Younis and I love spending my free time with my 1)............................ . We enjoy doing a lot of different things together because we're almost the same 2)............................ . We love playing 3)............................ on Saturday. We also like having 4)............................ together.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My cousins hate .... onions on their burger.
   a) eat   b) eats   c) eating   d) ate
2. I love .... arts and crafts after school.
   a) doing   b) do   c) does   d) did
3. They hate .... for the bus in the morning.
   a) waits   b) wait   c) waiting   d) waited
4. Fares doesn't like .... up a tent on vacation.
   a) put   b) has put   c) puts   d) putting
5. We like .... on a beach in good weather.
   a) sitting   b) sit   c) sits   d) sat

6. Sherif hates .... basketball

a) play b) plays c) playing d) played

7. I don't like .... breakfast before seven o'clock

a) has b) have c) had d) having

8. Amir doesn't like .... or drawing

a) paints b) paint c) painting d) painted

9. Nesma's grandma loves .... vegetables

a) growing b) grow c) grew d) grows

10. I hate .... emails on my phone

a) writing b) writes c) write d) wrote

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. like - What - doing - beach - do - you - on - the - ?

....

2. love - seeing - They - adventures - our - .

....

3. don't - We - putting - like - up - tent - a - .

....

4. outside - Amira - spending - enjoys - time - .

....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

What you like and don't like doing in your free time

Guiding elements:

(free time - like - outside - reading a book - hate - swimming - enjoy playing)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lesson (3)

WHAT DO YOU LIKE DOIN- IN YOUR FREE TIME?

Question with Present Simple

Yes / No question

Do + (I - they - we - you - a plural noun) + inf. ...?

⇨ Do you like cooking?

- Yes, I do. - No, I don't.

Does + (he - she - it - a singular noun) + inf. ...?

⇨ Does Reem enjoy swimming?

- Yes, she does. - No, she doesn't.

Wh- question

Q.W + do + (I - they - we - you - a plural noun) + inf. ...?

⇨ What hobby do you enjoy doing most?

I enjoy swimming most.

Q.W + does + (he - she - it - a singular noun) + inf. ...?

⇨ What does he like doing in his free time?

He likes playing football.

Help your child use a question in present simple.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم السؤال في المضارع البسيط.



Tip!

➪ You can answer the survey questions with short answers:

تستطيع إجابة استطلاع الرأي بإجابات قصيرة هكذا.

(✓) Yes, I do. (✗) No, I don't.

➪ You can add "really" to your answers to make them sound stronger:

يمكن أن تضيف كلمة "حقًا" للإجابة لجعلها أقوى.

- I really love playing tennis. - I really enjoy watching movies.

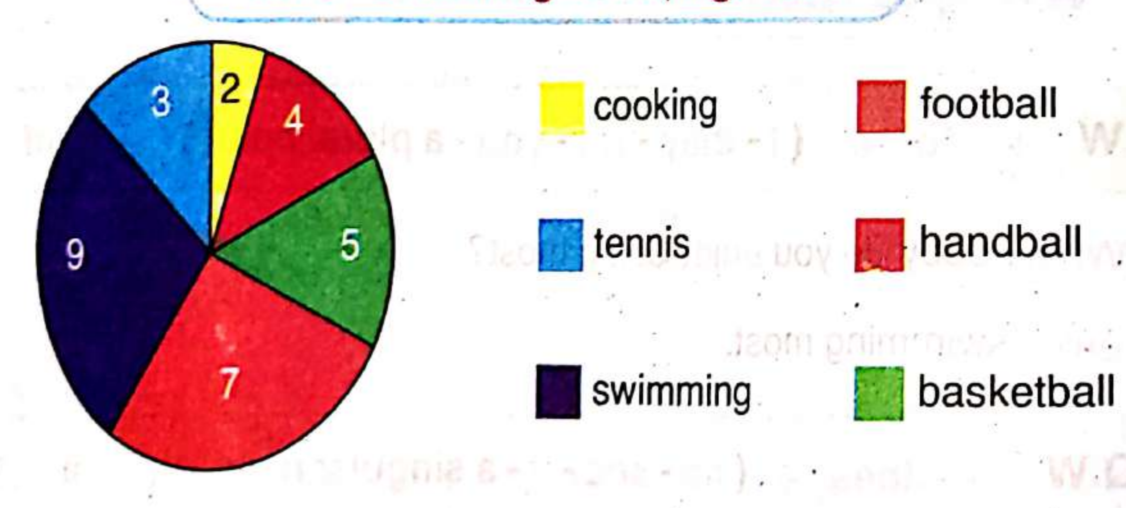
Long adjectives comparison

Comparative	
more + صفة + than	أكثر من
less + صفة + than	أقل من

Superlative	
the most + صفة	الأكثر
the least + صفة	الأقل

- Look at the label sections of the pie chart and complete.

more - Swimming - Cooking - less



➪ ________________ is the most popular activity.

➪ Football is ________________ popular than basketball.

➪ ________________ is the least popular activity.

➪ Tennis is ________________ popular than handball.

Help your child use a pie chart to make comparisons.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم الرسم البياني الدائري لعمل مقارنات.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Cooking - activities - more - the most - much

I'm Ali. In my class we do a class survey about students' favorite 1)............................ . Swimming is 2)............................ popular activity. Playing football is 3)............................ popular than doing creative hobbies. 4)............................ is the least popular activity.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. What .... you like doing in your free time?
   a) do b) does c) is d) are
2. Do you enjoy .... ?
   a) cook b) cooking c) cooked d) cooks
3. Do you like .... TV?
   a) watching b) watches c) watch d) watched
4. Which sport do you think is the .... exciting?
   a) more b) most c) less d) many
5. What do you like .... in your free time?
   a) does b) do c) doing d) did
6. Listening to music is .... popular than playing computer games.
   a) more b) most c) little d) least
7. Cooking is the .... popular activity.
   a) more b) little c) less d) least

8. .... Reem enjoy swimmi

a) Do b) Does c) Is d) Are

9. What is the .... popular activit

a) more b) most c) less d) many

10. Your friends like .... magazine

a) read b) reading c) reads d) has read

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - the most - Swimming - activity - popular - .

....

2. is - Cooking - popular - activity - the least - .

....

3. you - Do - cooking - enjoy - ?

....

4. new - Do - friends - making - like - you - ?

....

5. enjoy - really - movies - I - watching - .

....

4 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite sport

Guiding elements:

(swimming - practise - club - strong - not expensive)

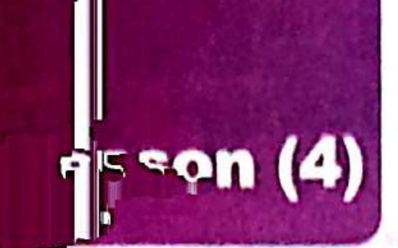
....

....

....

 Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



DO YOU LIKE READING POEMS?

Key vocabulary

poem	قصيدة	recipes	وصفات طهي	dessert	الحلو بعد الأكل
dishes	أطباق - أكلات	heart	القلب	bees	نحل
creative	مبدع	traveling	السفر	spelling	هجاء
airplane	طائرة ركاب	rhyme	قافية	story	قصة

Extra vocabulary

cook	يطبخ - طباخ	countryside	الريف
mine	ملكي	great	عظيم - رائع
knee	ركبة	nature	طبيعة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
cook	يطهو	cooked	cooked
paint	يلوّن - يدهن	painted	painted
want	يريد	wanted	wanted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
find	يجد	found	found
read	يقرأ	read	read
fly	يطير	flew	flown

Rhyming Words

Rhyming Words: are words that have the same sound, but don't have the same spelling.

1. art – heart – start
2. fly – eye – my
3. rain – plane – train
4. bed – head – said
5. book – rock – cook
6. tree – bee – sea

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read the poem.

- We Can All Have a Hobby.



Amir loves traveling.
He wants to do more.
He loves going places.
He's never been before.



Fares is creative.
And makes lots of art.
He paints and he draws.
He shows us his heart.

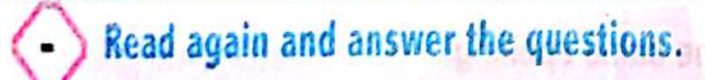


And Noha loves nature.
She hugs great big trees.
She goes hiking and camping.
And talks to the bees.



And then we have Tarek.
Who's such a great cook.
He loves making dishes.
He finds in a book.

There are so many things.
To do with our time.
We can all find a hobby
and then say, "It's mine!"



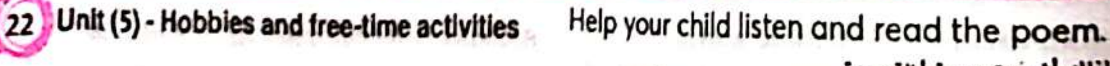
- Read again and answer the questions.

1. What does Amir love doing?

....

2. What does Fares make?

....



Help your child listen and read the poem.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ القصيدة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What does Amir love?

....

2. What does Fares make?

....

3. What does Noha love?

....

4. Who talks to the bees?

....

2 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Amir loves traveling. He wants to do more. He loves going to places, he's never been before. Fares is creative, and makes lots of art. He paints and he draws. He shows us his heart. And Noha loves nature. She hugs great big trees. She goes hiking and camping. And talks to the bees. And then we have Tarek who's such a great cook. He loves making dishes he finds in a book. There are so many things, to do with our time. We can all find a hobby and then say, "It's mine!"

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Amir likes going to ....
   - a) new places
   - b) places he knows
   - c) old places
   - d) ancient places
2. The best title for the poem is "..".
   - a) what children like doing
   - b) after school activities
   - c) we don't have hobbies
   - d) we can all have a hobby



B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Fares show us?

....

4. What does Tarek love?

....

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. you - like - Do - poems - reading - ?

....

2. likes - Fares - art - making - .

....

3. in - The - sky - sun - is - the - .

....

4. likes - Tarek - dishes - really - making - .

....

4 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

We can all have a hobby

Guiding elements:

(have - a hobby - Amir traveling - Fares - creative - Noha - nature)

....

....

....

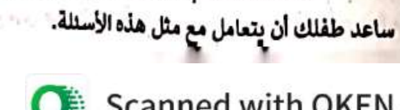
....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.





FREE-TIME ACTIVITIES IN ANCIENT EGYPT

Listen and say.

Ancient Egyptians' Activities



hunting
الصيد



archery
الرماية



board game
لعبة لوحية



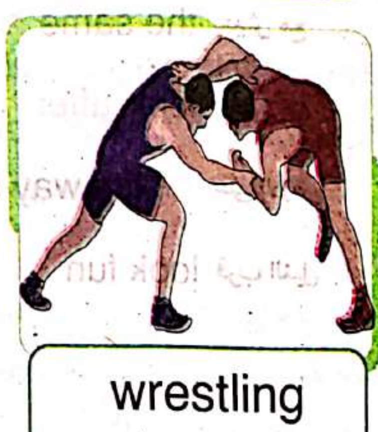
chariot race
سباق العربات الحربية



boxing
الملاكمة



fishing
صيد الأسماك



wrestling
المصارعة

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra vocabulary

mehen = snake game	لعبة السلم و الثعبان	excited	مسرور جدًا / متحمس
Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	buildings	مباني
musical instruments	آلات موسيقية	drums	الطبول
housework	أعمال منزلية	friendly	ودود
senet	لعبة السينيت	pharaoh	فرعون
hippo	فرس النهر	dangerous	خطير

Conjugation of verbs (Regular verbs)

Present		Past	P.P	Present		Past	P.P
finish	ينهي	finished	finished	help	يساعد	helped	helped
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after	looked after	live	يعيش	lived	lived
wrestle	يصارع	wrestled	wrestled	box	يلاكم	boxed	boxed

Important expressions and prepositions

arrive in	يصل إلى (مكان كبير)	on a farm	في مزرعة
live with	يعيش مع	the same as	نفس الشيء / مثل
hear about	يسمع عن	look after	يعتني بـ
on the ground	على الأرض	on the way home	في طريق العودة للمنزل
near the Nile	قرب النيل	look fun	يبدوا ممتعًا

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



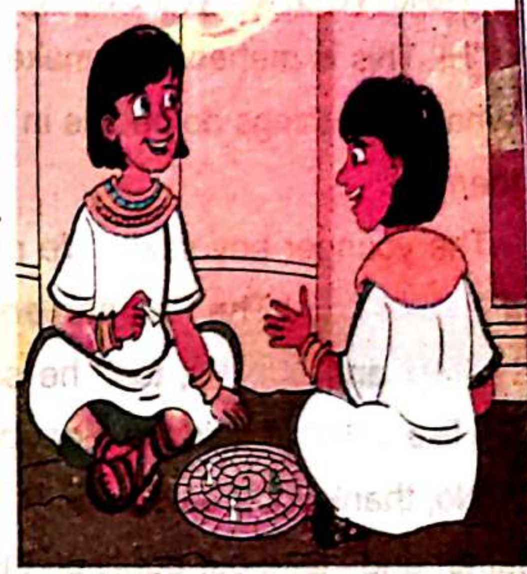
Lesson (5)

Read the story.

- Who are the main characters?

Hapi takes a trip to the city

Where did Hapi and his family live?



Hapi lived in Ancient Egypt. He lived with his parents on a farm near the Nile. Every day, he helped his father look after his animals. After work, he and his sister Amunet helped his mother in the house. When they finished the housework, they sometimes played a board game called senet. It was a very popular game in Ancient Egypt.

- أين عاش حابي وعائلته؟

عاش حابي في مصر القديمة. عاش مع والديه في مزرعة بالقرب من النيل. كل يوم ،كان يساعد والده في الاعتناء بحيواناته. بعد العمل ، هو وأخته أمونيت كانا يساعدان والدتهما في المنزل. عندما كانا ينتهيا من الأعمال المنزلية ، كانا في بعض الأحيان يلعبان لعبة لوحية تسمى سينيت. كانت لعبة شعبية جدًا في مصر القديمة.

Where did Hapi go with his father?

One day, his father said, "I'm going to the city today. Hapi, now you're ten years old, you can come with me. Your sister can help your mother today." It was a long way to the city, but Hapi was excited. "I've never been to the city before," he said. "What's it like, Dad?" "It's not the same as the country," he said. "You'll soon see!"

- أين ذهب حابي مع والده؟

في أحد الأيام ، قال والده: " أنا ذاهب إلى المدينة اليوم يا حابي ، أنت الآن عمرك عشر سنوات، يمكنك أن تأتي معي. وتستطيع أختك مساعدة أمك اليوم." كان الطريق طويلا إلى المدينة ، ولكن حابي كان متحمسًا. وقال: "لم أذهب إلى المدينة من قبل ، كيف تبدو يا أبي؟" فقال: " إنها ليست مثل الريف". و قال له: "سترى حالًا".



Help your child read the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة.



Who did Hapi meet in the story?

When they arrived in the city, Hapi saw many people and buildings. He saw two boys playing a game on the ground, but it wasn't senet.

"Hello! What are you playing?" Hapi asked them.

"Hi. This is mehen, the snake game," the older boy said. "It looks fun. What other things do people in the city do in their free time?" Hapi asked them.

The younger boy said, "We play a lot of sports. Sometimes we watch a chariot race! The Pharaoh and his family like chariot races. They like archery and hunting, too;' he said.

"I like boxing!" said the older boy. "Do you want to wrestle or box?"

"No, thank you," said Hapi. "I live in the country. I love swimming. My father and I take our boats on the river, and we enjoy fishing, too."

"That sounds fun," said the younger boy. "Perhaps we can visit you one day."On the way home, Hapi's dad said, "Did you like the city?"

"Yes!" said Hapi. "People don't do the same free-time activities as us, but they are very friendly."

من الذين قابلهم حابي في القصة؟

عندما وصلا إلى المدينة ، رأى حابي كثير من الناس والمباني. رأى اثنين من الأولاد يلعبون لُعبة على الأرض ، ولكنها لم تكن سينيت. سألهم حابي: "مرحبًا! ماذا تلعبون؟". قال الولد الأكبر سنًا: أهلًا. هذه ميهين، لعبة الثعبان.". قال حابي: "تبدو ممتعة وسألهم: "ما الأشياء الأخرى التي يفعلها الناس في المدينة في أوقات فراغهم؟". رد الولد الأصغر قائلًا: "نلعب الكثير من الرياضات، أحيانًا نشاهد سباق العربات الحربية! الفرعون وعائلته يحبون سباق العربات الحربية، والرماية و الصيد أيضًا". قال الصبي الأكبر سنًا: "وأنا أحب الملاكمة!". وسأل حابي: "هل تريد أن تصارع أو تلاكم؟" قال حابي:"شكرا لك". "أنا أعيش في الرّيف. أحب السباحة. والدي وأنا نأخذ القوارب في النهر ، ونستمتع بالصيد أيضًا.". قال الصبي الأصغر:" هذا يبدو ممتعًا". وأضاف: "ربما يمكننا زيارتك في يومٍ ما." وفي طريقهم للبيت سأله والده: " هل أعجبتك حياة المدينة؟" قال حابي: "نعم!" وأضاف: "الناس هناك لا يفعلون نفس أنشطة أوقات الفراغ مثلنا ، ولكنهم ودودون جدًا."

Help your child read the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where did Hapi live?

....

2. What did he do every day?

....

3. Who helped their mother?

....

4. What was the board game called?

....



Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

boxing - Ancient Egypt - fine - watching - free time

Toka : Hi Rawan. How are you?

Rawan : Hello Toka. I'm 1) .... thank you.

Toka : What do you like doing in your 2) .... ?

Rawan : I like swimming and 3) .... TV.

Toka : Do you like playing board games?

Rawan : Yes, especially the games from 4) ....

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. did - **Where** - live - Hapi - family - his - and - ?

....

2. saw - **Hapi** - buildings - people - many - and - .

....

3. enjoyed - **Children** - music - playing - in - Ancient Egypt - .

....

4. were - **What** - boys - doing - the - city - in - the - ?

....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Children in Ancient Egypt did lots of things in their free time. The enjoyed singing and dancing. They played musical instruments like the drum and the harp. Children had lots of different toys to play with, too. They liked playing with balls, dolls, and toy animals. And they loved playing board games. The most popular board games were senet and mehen. Mehen was also called the snake game. Children loved swimming, too and they often swam in the Nile. But it was dangerous! There were crocodiles and hippos in lots of places in the Nile!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The best title for the text is " ...."
   a) Hobbies b) Animals activities
   c) Ancient Egyptian Activities d) Swimming

2. The most popular game in Ancient Egypt was .... and mehen
   a) swimming b) fishing c) senet d) boxing

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What was the other name for mehen?

....

4. Why was it dangerous for children to swim in the Nile?

....

 Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (6)

WRITING AN EMAIL TO A FRIEND

Key vocabulary

email friend	صديق بالمراسلة	birdwatching	مشاهدة الطيور
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	environment	البيئة
photography	التصوير الفوتوغرافي	Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة

Extra vocabulary

baking	صناعة الخبز	awesome	مدهش
knitting	التطريز - الحياكة	introduction	مقدمة
closing	خاتمة	wildlife	الحياة البرية
writer	كاتب	modern	حديث
surfing	ركوب الأمواج	informal	غير رسمي

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
write	يكتب	wrote	written
teach	يعلم - يدرس	taught	taught

Important expressions and prepositions

Dear	عزيزي / عزيزتي	Write soon.	اكتب لي قريبًا.
Bye for now,	إلى اللقاء الآن،	all about	كل شيء عن
natural environment	البيئة الطبيعية	What about you?	ماذا عنك؟
take pictures	يلتقط صور	learn about	يتعلم عن



Study the following definitions:

gorgeous	very beautiful	جميل - رائع جدًا
awesome	very good	مدهش
cool	modern and nice	لطيف
surfing	is a sport which you surf on surfboard	ركوب الأمواج
knitting	means weaving or sewing	الحياكة
baking	is when you bake bread, cake.... etc.	صناعة الخبز
birdwatching	is when you watch birds in their natural environment	مشاهدة الطيور
wildlife photography	is when you take pictures of animals, birds and plants in nature	تصوير الحياة البرية

Tips for writing an email!

1- Start the email with: Hi, Hello, Dear....

ابدأ الإيميل بـ: "أهلًا، مرحبًا / عزيزي - عزيزتي".

2- End the email with. Bye for now, Bye, Your friend, Write soon.

اختم الإيميل بـ إلى اللقاء الآن، مع السلامة، صديقك، اكتب لي قريبًا.

3- Use contractions.

استخدم الاختصارات.

I'm = I am / He's = He is

4- Use adjectives to make your email interesting.

استخدم الصفات لتجعل بريدك الإلكتروني شيق.

gorgeous , cool

5- Ask your email friend one or two questions

اسأل صديقك بالمراسلة سؤالًا أو سؤالين.

Help your child learn how to write an email.

ساعد طفلك ان كيفية كتابة بريدًا إلكترونيًا.



(6)

the email.

From : Sara اسم الراسل

To : Charlotte اسم المرسل إليه

Subject : New email friend موضوع الرسالة

Dear Charlotte, ← التحية

Hello! I'm your new email friend. I'm ten years old and I live in Luxor, in the south of Egypt. ← المقدمة

عزيزتي تشارلوت،

مرحبًا! أنا صديقة البريد الإلكتروني الجديدة لكِ. عمري عشر سنوات وأعيش في الأقصر ، في جنوب مصر.

My favorite hobby is birdwatching, which is when you watch birds in their natural environment. My dad is a tour guide, and he takes people to see birds on the river. He's taught me all about the different birds, too. I know where they live and what they eat. There are so many gorgeous birds here! Birdwatching is awesome! My other favorite hobby is photography. I love taking pictures and recording videos of the birds we see. Photography is so cool!

هوايتي المفضلة هي مراقبة الطيور ، وهي عندما تشاهدين الطيور في بيئتها الطبيعية. والدي مرشد سياحي ، ويأخذ الناس لرؤية الطيور على النهر. لقد علمني كل شيء عن الطيور المختلفة أيضًا. أعرف أين يعيشون وماذا يأكلون. يوجد الكثير من الطيور الرائعة هنا! مشاهدة الطيور رائعة! هوايتي المفضلة الأخرى هي التصوير الفوتوغرافي. أحب التقاط الصور وتسجيل مقاطع الفيديو للطيور التي نراها. التصوير رائع جدًا!

الموضوع

What about you? What do you like doing in your free time? ← سؤال الخاتمة

ماذا عنكِ؟ ماذا تحبين أن تفعلي في وقت فراغك؟

Please write soon!
Bye for now,
Sara

الخاتمة

من فضلك، اكتبي لي قريبًا!

وداعًا الآن،

سارة



General Activities

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How old is Sara?

....

2. Where does Sara live?

....

3. What's Sara's favorite hobby?

....

4. Why does Sara's dad take people on the river?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

gorgeous - Birdwatching - photography - tour guide -

My favorite hobby is birdwatching. My dad is a 1)............................., an... takes people to see birds on the river. He's taught me all about the diffe... 2)............................., too. There are so many 3)................................ birds he... 4)...................... is awesome.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - to - Who - writing - Ramy - ?

....

2. your - new - I'm - friend - email - .

....

3. is - What - favorite - his - animal - ?

....

 Help your child deal with such questions
...ك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الـ...



Lesson (6)

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

From : Ramy
To : Jamie
Subject : New email friend

Hi Jamie,

Hello. I'm your new email friend. I'm ten years old and I live in Alexandria, in Egypt. Have you ever been to Egypt? It's a really interesting, beautiful country. What are your hobbies? My favorite hobby is wildlife photography. Wildlife photography is when you take pictures of animals, birds, and plants in nature. There are lots of wonderful animals in Egypt. I really love taking photos of them and learning about them. I have about 300 wildlife photos. My favorite animals are fennec foxes. They're gorgeous. I love hiking, too. The Siwa Oasis is an awesome place to see wildlife. I often go hiking with my parents and my older brother Sherif. He's 18. What do you like doing in your free time?

Write soon!

Bye for now.

Ramy

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ramy lives in ....
   a) Luxor b) Alexandria c) London d) Aswan
2. Ramy's favorite animal is the ....
   a) steppe eagle b) monkey c) fennec fox d) lion

Answer the following questions.

3. Who is Ramy going hiking with?

....

4. How many photos of animals does he have?

....







5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My favorite hobby ______________ birdwatchi

   a) are b) do c) does d) is

2. "Gorgeous" means very ______________

   a) ugly b) bad c) beautiful d) happy

3. ______________ does the writer live? - In Lux

   a) What b) Who c) Which d) Where

4. What do you like ______________ in your free tim

   a) do b) does c) did d) doing

6 Write an email to your friend of FIFTY (50) words about "Your favorite hobbies" Your name is Sara and your friend's name is Ja

Guiding elements:

- Explain two favorite hobbies that you enjoy.
- Ask your friend a question about her life

From :______________

To :______________

Subject :______________

____

____

____

____

____

____

____

____

Help your child deal with such questions.

طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (7) STORY

Vocabulary

campfire	نار المخيم	tourist office	مكتب سياحي
trail	طريق / ممر - مَمشى	campsite	مخيم / موقع المعسكر
camping	التخييم	backpack	حقيبة الظهر
reception	استقبال	hiking	التنزه لمسافات طويلة
campers	المخيمون	sunscreen	كريم واقي ضد الشمس
tent	خيمة	valley	وادي

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
prepare	يُحضر - يُجهّز - يُعد	prepared	prepared
work	يعمل	worked	worked
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
light	يضيء - يُشعل	lit	lit

Important expressions and prepositions

our way back to	طريق عودتنا لـ	rough path	ممر متعرج "غير مستوي"
deep valley	وادٍ عميق	take .... out of	يُخرِج ... من
work together	يعملون معًا	put up the tent	ينصب الخيمة
the same	نفس الشيء	picnic table	مائدة الطعام
drop a pin on the map	يضع دبوس على الخريطة		

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read the story.

Amira goes camping

Amira went to visit her cousins Ali and Mona in Sharm El-Sheikh in the summe
They wanted to show Amira the beautiful mountains near there. So, they decide
to take her camping. Uncle Wael drove to the start of the trail, which is a roug
path across the desert. The air smelled beautiful and they went hiking into
a deep valley. "This place is very beautiful;' Amira said. She took out her phone
recorded a video, and dropped a pin on the map. They finally arrived at the firs
campsite. Uncle Wael took the tent out of his backpack. "Who can remembe
how to put it up?" he asked.

"I can!" said Ali.

"Who is going to make the campfire?"

"I can!" answered Mona.

"And I can cook;' said Aunt Mariam.

But after 30 minutes, they found that Ali could not remember how to put up the
tent, and Mona could not light the fire. So they did not eat and they could no
sleep in the tent. The next day, they used the maps on their phones to find the
next campsite. When they got there.

Aunt Mariam said, "Let's all work together today. First, we can put up the tent
Then, we can help to light the fire. Finally, you can all help me to cook dinner!"
They put up their tent quickly by working together. Then they started the fire.
Next, they all worked together to prepare dinner. Amira washed the vegetables,
Mona cut them, and Aunt Mariam cooked. Ali prepared the picnic table. They
went to bed early. They were not tired or hungry. The next morning, they had
breakfast and put on their backpacks. "Oh, no! My phone doesn't work!" said
Uncle Wael. "My phone is the same!" said Aunt Mariam. "What about your
phones, children?"

"We don't have any reception here;' they answered.

"What can we do now?" Aunt Mariam asked. "How can we find the car?" "I have
a paper map. I got it from the tourist office; said Uncle Wael. "We can read the
map together and find our way back to the car.".

Help your child listen and read the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ القصة.

Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where did you go on the trip?

....

2. What did your brother take?

....

3. Who put up the tent?

....

4. What did your sister do?

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

backpack - beautiful - summer - camping - trail

Amira went to visit her cousins in Sharm El-Sheikh in the 1)........................ They went 2)........................ Uncle Wael drove to the start of the 3)........................ which is a rough path across the desert. The air smelled 4)........................ and they went hiking into a deep valley.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Amira went to visit her cousins in Sharm El-Sheikh. They wanted to show Amira the mountains so they decided to take her camping. Uncle Wael drove to the start of the trail. The air smelled beautiful and they went hiking into a deep valley. They finally arrived at the first campsite. Uncle Wael took the tent out of his backpack, Ali would put up the tent. Mona would make the campfire. Aunt Mariam would cook. They would work together to put up the tent, start the fire and cook dinner.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Amira went to visit her ....

   a) brothers   b) sons   c) sisters   d) cousins

2. They decided to take her ....

   a) swimming   b) camping   c) hiking   d) reading

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Who drove to the start of the trail?

....

4. What did uncle Wael take out of his backpack?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Amira took out her phone, recorded a video and dropped a ________ on a map.
   a) pen b) bin c) pin d) ban
2. She put some food on the .... to coo
   a) campfire b) campsite c) car d) fridge
3. They put up a .... to sleep i
   a) fire b) sunscreen c) camera d) tent
4. I'm going to .... the fir
   a) light b) night c) right d) flight

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. can - you - What - from - learn - story - the - ?

....

2. Wael - Uncle - to - drove - trail - the - .

....

3. put - food - on - Amira - campfire - some - the - .

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Camping trip

Guiding elements:

1- Where are you going?
2- With whom are you going?
3- What are you going to take?
4- What can you do there?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Writing Corner

Favorite sports and hobbies

There are many popular sports and activities in the world. I like playing football with my friends in my free time. My brother likes going camping a lot in the summer. My sister enjoys swimming so she goes swimming at the beach with my mother. My mother doesn't like swimming, but she likes hiking outside. She likes watching beautiful birds in the nature. My father doesn't like hiking. He likes reading a newspaper in his free time. We also like having dinner together.

Free-Time Activities in Ancient Egypt

There were many activities and sports in Ancient Egypt. Children in Ancient Egypt did lots of things in their free time. They enjoyed singing and dancing. They played musical instruments. They loved playing board games. The most popular board games were senet and mehen. Mehen was also called the snake game. Children loved swimming, too, and they swam in the Nile.

New email friend

From : Ramy
To : Jamie
Subject : New email friend

Hi Jamie,

Hello. I'm your new email friend. I'm ten years old and I live in Alexandria, in Egypt. Have you ever been to Egypt? It's a really interesting, beautiful country. What are your hobbies? My favorite hobby is wildlife photography. Wildlife photography is when you take pictures of animals, birds, and plants in nature. There are lots of wonderful animals in Egypt. I really love taking photos of them and learning about them. I have about 300 wildlife photos. My favorite animals are fennec foxes. They're gorgeous. I love hiking, too. The Siwa Oasis is an awesome place to see wildlife. I often go hiking with my parents and my older brother Sherif. He's 18. What do you like doing in your free time?

Write soon!

Bye for now,

Ramy

Help your child write a paragraph or an email.
ساعد طفلك ان يكتب فقرة أو إيميل.



Dictation on Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

ن تشكيل الورق	....	السباحة	....
تزحلق على الجليد	....	كرة القدم	....
رواية	....	التخييم	....
مجلة	....	نزهة	....
الطقس	....	التنزه على الأقدام	....

Lesson (2)

مغامرة	....	مدونة إلكترونية	....
مختلف	....	وقت فراغ	....
معًا - سويًا	....	مفضل	....
جريدة	....	جبل	....
سوق	....	بالخارج	....

Lesson (3)

كرة اليد	....	الطهي	....
التنس	....	كرة القدم	....
محبوب - شائع	....	كرة السلة	....

Lesson (4)

القلب	....	قصيرة	....
قافية	....	أطباق - أكلات	....
الحلو بعد الأكل	....	مبدع	....
نحل	....	طائرة ركاب	....
قصة	....	وصفة طهي	....

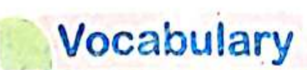
Lessons (5 & 6)

الملاكمة	....	الصيد	....
صيد الأسماك	....	الرماية	....
المصارعة	....	لعبة لوحية	....
مصر القديمة	....	سباق العربات الحربية	....
مرشد سياحي	....	مشاهدة الطيور	....
فائق الجمال	....	التصوير الفوتوغرافي	....
مدهش	....	شيق	....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Review on Unit (5)



Vocabulary

Free-time activities and collocations:

have a picnic	يتنزه في الهواء الطلق	go camping	يذهب للتخييم
make new friends	يكوّن صداقات جديدة	go hiking	يذهب للتنزه
play sports	يلعب رياضات	put up a tent	ينصب خيمة
record a video	يسجل فيديو		
do arts and crafts			يمارس الفنون والحرف اليدوية
put on sunscreen			يضع كريم واقي من الشمس

Free-time activities in Ancient Egypt:

archery	الرماية	boxing	الملاكمة
chariot race	سباق عربات حربية	board game	لعبة لوحية
fishing	صيد الأسماك	hunting	الصيد
wrestling	المصارعة	snake game	لعبة السلم والثعبان

Adjectives

gorgeous	خلاب - فاتن	cool	رائع
awesome	مذهل	beautiful	جميل
interesting	شيق - مثير للاهتمام	amazing	مذهل - مدهش

Extra Vocabulary

campfire	نار المخيم	campsite	مخيم
drop a pin on a map	يسقط دبوس على الخريطة	tour guide	مرشد سياحي
picnic table	مائدة الطعام "النزهة"	trail	ممر / طريق
(phone) reception	إشارة استقبال الهاتف	backpack	حقيبة الظهر

Help your child revise unit (5).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الخامسة.





verb + ing

Subject (فاعل) + (like / love / enjoy hate / don't like / dislike) + verb (فعل) + ing

⇨ I like spending time outside.

Spelling rules

If a verb ends in a (consonant + e), we take away the (e) and add (-ing)

have ⇨ having   take ⇨ taking   dance ⇨ dancing

If a verb ends in a (a vowel then a consonant), we write the last letter twice and add (-ing).

put ⇨ putting   swim ⇨ swimming

Yes / No question with present simple

(Do / Does) + subject + inf. ...?

⇨ Do you like cooking?   - Yes, I do.   - No, I don't.

⇨ Does Reem enjoy swimming?   -Yes, she does.   - No, she doesn't.

Wh- question with present simple

Q.W + (do / does) + subject + inf. ...?

⇨ What hobby do you enjoy doing most?
I enjoy swimming most.

⇨ What does he like doing in his free time?
He likes playing football.



Exam On Unit (5)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What did children in Ancient Egypt enjoy doing? ....
2. What did they play? ....
3. What were the most popular games? ....
4. Where did the children swim? ....

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

ice cream - burger - playing - onions - eating

We like to have dinner together. My parents usually take us to have a 1).................. I have mine with every thing on it, but my cousins don't have any 2).................. They hate 3).................. onions on their burger. Sometimes my aunt and uncle take us to have 4).......................... I love eating it with chocolate.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Children in Ancient Egypt did lots of things in their free time. <u>They</u> enjoyed singing and dancing. They played musical instruments like the drums and the harp. Children had lots of different toys to play with, too. They liked playing with balls, dolls, and toy animals. And they loved playing board games. The most popular board games were senet and mehen. Mehen was also called the snake game. Children loved swimming, too and they swam in the Nile. But it was dangerous! There were crocodiles and hippos in lots of places in the Nile!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....

   a) nobles b) pharaohs
   c) children in Ancient Egypt d) scribes

2. The most popular board games were ....

   a) senet and mehen b) swimming and hiking
   c) writing and reading d) camping and traveling

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What was the other name for mehen? ....
4. Where did the children in Ancient Egypt swim? ....



4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Fares lived in Aswan with his parents and granddad. (   )
2. Fares liked chatting to his granddad about his life when he was younger. (   )

B Complete the following.

1. .... loved chatting to Grandda
2. .... studied hard and played football with his friend

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I enjoy .... time outside
   a) spend b) spends c) spending d) spent
2. We .... like putting up a tent
   a) doesn't b) don't c) aren't d) haven't
3. My dad loves .... in his free time
   a) reading b) reads c) read d) has read
4. Cooking is the .... popular activity
   a) less b) little c) least d) more

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. do - you - like - What - in - free - your - doing - time - ?

....

2. love - They - our - adventure - seeing - .

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

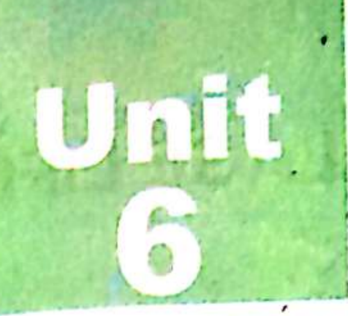
Different activities and hobbies

Guiding elements:

(free time - reading - swimming - camping - doing arts and crafts)

 Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



My wonderful city

مدينتي الرائعة

In this unit, the students will ...

- understand and use words for places in cities and villages. يفهم ويستخدم كلمات خاصة بالأماكن في المدن والقرى.
- understand and use indefinite pronouns. يفهم ويستخدم الضمائر الغير محددة.
- listen to and understand descriptions of famous cities and landmarks. يستمع إلى ويفهم أوصاف مدن ومعالم شهيرة.
- do a famous buildings quiz. يحل اختبارًا حول المباني الشهيرة.
- find out about a new shopping mall and use the infinitive of purpose. يتعرف على مركز تسوق جديد ويستخدم صيغة المصدر لبيان الغرض.
- understand a story about living near water. يفهم قصة عن العيش بالقرب من الماء.
- write a description for a competition entry. يكتب وصفًا لدخول المنافسة.
- understand a story called *The Railway Children*. يفهم قصة تسمى أطفال السكة الحديدية.

Lesson (1) CITY AND VILLAGE LIFE

Listen and repeat.


harbor
مرفأ - ميناء


tram
ترام


bike path
مسار للدراجات


planetarium
مبنى القبة السماوية


university
جامعة


ruins
أطلال - بقايا أثرية


fort
قلعة - حصن


aquarium
رض أحياء مائية - حوض سمك



Key vocabulary

the Bibliotheca Alexandrina	مكتبة الإسكندرية	display	رض - معرض
Roman amphitheater	المسرح الروماني المدرج	Alexandria University	جامعة الإسكندرية



Extra vocabulary

musical shows	عروض موسيقية	modern	حديث
exciting	مثير	meetings	اجتماعات
round	دائري	traffic	حركة المرور
plays	مسرحيات	special	خاص - مميز
ancient	قديم		

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.





Lesson (1)

Definitions

harbor	A place where boats stop and stay.	مرفأ - ميناء
university	A place where students can study after they leave school.	جامعة
fort	A large old building which is made of stone and has thick walls.	قلعة - حصن
aquarium	A place where you can see fish, sharks and other sea animals.	معرض أحياء مائية

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
rent	يستأجر	rented	rented
show	يعرض	showed	shown

Important expressions and prepositions

on bike path	على مسار الدراجات	on a boat trip	في رحلة بالقارب
interested in	مهتم بـ	at the sunset	عند غروب الشمس
at university	في الجامعة	used to + inf.	اعتاد أن
used for	يستخدم لـ	as well as	بالإضافة إلى
aged 9	في سن التاسعة	colorful fish	سمك ملون
made of	مصنوع من	on Earth	على كوكب الأرض
by tram	بواسطة الترام	learn about	يتعلم عن

Did you know?

More than half of the people on Earth live in a city.

أكثر من نصف سكان الكرة الأرضية يعيشون في مدينة.

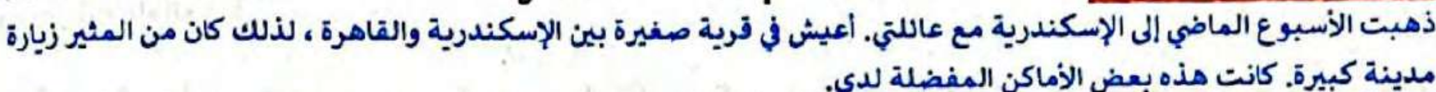
Listen and read how did Nesma and her family travel around Alexandria?

My city visit *by Nesma, aged 9*

زيارتي لمدينة كبيرة بواسطة نسمة، ٩ سنوات

Last week I went to Alexandria with my family. I live in a small village between Alexandria and Cairo, so it was exciting to visit a big city. These were some of my favorite places.

ذهبت الأسبوع الماضي إلى الإسكندرية مع عائلتي. أعيش في قرية صغيرة بين الإسكندرية والقاهرة ، لذلك كان من المثير زيارة مدينة كبيرة. كانت هذه بعض الأماكن المفضلة لدي.



The harbor

الميناء

Alexandria has a very important harbor. It's the oldest and biggest in Egypt. We went on a boat trip from the harbor at sunset. It was beautiful because we could see the city and all the boats on the sea. We visited the Citadel of Qaitbay, too. This is a very old fort that people used to protect the city.

الإسكندرية بها ميناء هام جدًا. إنه الأقدم والأكبر في مصر. ذهبنا في رحلة بالقارب من الميناء عند غروب الشمس. كانت جميلة لأننا استطعنا رؤية المدينة وجميع القوارب في البحر. زرنا قلعة قايتباي أيضًا. هذا حصن قديم جدًا استخدمه الناس لحماية المدينة.

The Bibliotheca Alexandria

مكتبة الإسكندرية

This library is a famous modern building near the harbor in Alexandria. The round building is beautiful and different to anything I've seen before. It has over 4 million books! There are also museums and a planetarium, where we saw an amazing display about stars and planets.

هذه المكتبة هي مبنى حديث شهير بالقرب من الميناء في الإسكندرية. البناء الدائري جميل ومختلف عن أي شيء رأيته من قبل. بالمكتبة أكثر من ٤ ملايين كتابًا! هناك أيضًا المتاحف والقبة السماوية ، حيث رأينا عرضًا مذهلًا عن النجوم والكواكب.

Alexandria University
جامعة الإسكندرية

When we were in Alexandria, we visited my cousin. She's at university there and she's studying science. She showed us where she studied. The university buildings are very big - a lot bigger than my school! There are lots of students and I think it would be a great city to study in.

عندما كنا في الإسكندرية ، زرنا ابنة عمي. إنها في الجامعة هناك وتدرس العلوم. أرتنا أين درست. مباني الجامعة كبيرة جدًا-أكبر بكثير من مدرستي! هناك الكثير من الطلاب واعتقد أنها ستكون مدينة رائعة للدراسة فيها.

The aquarium
معرض الأحياء المائية

I really liked seeing the colorful fish and sea animals in the aquarium. It isn't very big, but there are lots of different things to see there. I learned a lot about fish in the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea, as well as fish which live in the Nile.

أنا حقًا أحب رؤية الأسماك الملونة والحيوانات البحرية في معرض الأحياء المائية. إنه ليس كبيرًا جدًا ، ولكن هناك الكثير من الأشياء المختلفة التي يمكن رؤيتها هناك. تعلمت الكثير عن الأسماك في البحر الأبيض المتوسط والبحر الأحمر ، بالإضافة إلى الأسماك التي تعيش في النيل.

Roman amphitheater
المسرح الروماني المدرج

We visited the ruins of the ancient Roman amphitheatre in the city. A long time ago, people used it for musical shows, meetings, and plays. It was interesting to visit somewhere so old!

قمنا بزيارة أنقاض المدرج الروماني القديم في المدينة. ومنذ زمن بعيد استخدمه الناس للعروض الموسيقية, والاجتماعات, والمسرحيات. كان من المثير للاهتمام زيارة مكان قديم جدًا!

It was fun to be in Alexandria, because there are lots of things to see and do. Over 3.5 million people live here so there's a lot of traffic. There are bike paths in some parts of the city and you can rent bikes to travel around, but we traveled by tram. It was easy and cheap and we saw lots of different places. I can't wait to visit the city again soon!

كان من الممتع التواجد في الإسكندرية ، لأن هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي يمكنك رؤيتها والقيام بها. أكثر من ٣,٥ مليون نسمة يعيشون هنا لذلك هناك الكثير من حركة المرور. توجد مسارات للدراجات في بعض الأجزاء من المدينة ويمكنك استئجار الدراجات للتنقل ، ولكن ذهبنا عن طريق الترام. كان سهلًا ورخيصًا ورأينا الكثير من الأماكن المختلفة. لا أستطيع الانتظار لزيارة المدينة مرة أخرى قريبًا!



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Last week I went to ....
   a) Aswan b) Alexandria c) Luxor d) Cairo
2. I went there with my ....
   a) friends b) family c) team d) teachers
3. I live in a small ....
   a) country b) city c) town d) village
4. It was .... to visit a big city.
   a) boring b) interesting c) exciting d) amazing

2 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What do you like seeing in the aquarium?

....

2. Is the aquarium very big?

....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

trip - harbor - protect - Citadel

Alexandria has a very important (1)........................ It's the oldest and biggest in Egypt. We went on a boat (2)........................ from the harbor at sunset. It was beautiful because we could see the city and all the boats on the sea. We visited the (3)........................ of Qaitbay, too. This is a very old fort that people used to (4)........................ the city.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

We visited the ruins of the ancient Roman amphitheater in the city. A long time ago, people used it for musical shows, meetings, and plays. It was interesting to visit somewhere so old! It was fun to be in Alexandria, because there are lots of things to see and do. Over 3.5 million people live here so there's a lot of traffic. There are bike paths in some parts of the city and you can rent bikes to travel around, but we traveled by tram.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is ....
   a) the meetings b) the ancient city
   c) the Roman amphitheater d) the musical shows
2. The underlined word "here" refers to ....
   a) Alexandria b) Aswan c) Luxor d) Giza

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did people use the Roman amphitheater for?..........................
4. How can you travel around the city?..

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We walked around the .... because we are interested in boats.
   a) planetarium b) aquarium c) harbor d) airport
2. I visited the .... of Qaitbay.
   a) planetarium b) harbor c) aquarium d) Citadel
3. He went to the .... because he wanted to see sea animals.
   a) planetarium b) aquarium c) harbor d) citadel
4. Nesma travelled around the city on ....
   a) bike paths b) tram c) bus d) plane

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5. We visited the .... of the ancient Romans.
   a) harbor b) aquarium c) ruins d) university
6. A .... is a large old building which is made of stone and has thick walls.
   a) display b) fort c) library d) harbor
7. We saw an amazing display about stars and planets at the ....
   a) planetarium b) aquarium c) harbor d) university

6 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. has - Alexandria - important - harbor - a very - .

....

2. Aswan - I - family - my - with - went - to - .

....

3. is - building - The library - modern - a famous - .

....

4. fun - It - Alexandria - in - be - to - was - .

....

5. Qaitbay - fort - The Citadel - a very - is - of - old - .

....

7 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Alexandria City

Guiding words:

(big - harbor - library - the Citadel of Qaitbay)

....

....

....

....

Lesson (2) LANGUAGE

Vocabulary

Sinai peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء	village	
café	مقهى	Khan El-Khalili	خليلي
delicious	لذيذ	bakery	
hungry	جوعان	garbage	
quiet	هادئ		

Important expressions and prepositions

next to	بجوار	have fun	ع
at the door	على الباب	play sports	رياضات
for breakfast	على الإفطار	drop litter	قمامة
made from	مصنوع من	summer vacation	صيفية
do well	يؤدي بشكل جيد		

Read about children's favorite places.

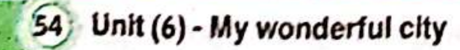
What's your favorite place?

My favorite place is the sports center in our village. Everybody goes to the sports center on Thursday night. We meet all our friends, play sports, and have fun.

كاني المفضل هو المركز الرياضي في قريتنا. الجميع يذهب إلى المركز الرياضي ليلة الخميس. نلتقي بجميع أصدقائنا ، ونلعب رياضة ، ونستمتع.

My favorite place is the café next to my grandparents' house. Don't eat anything before you go there. The cakes are very big and there is nothing there I don't like!

مكاني المفضل هو المقهى المجاور لمنزل أجدادي. لا تأكل أي شيء قبل أن تذهب إلى هناك. الكعك كبير جدًا ولا يوجد شيء لا أحبه هناك!

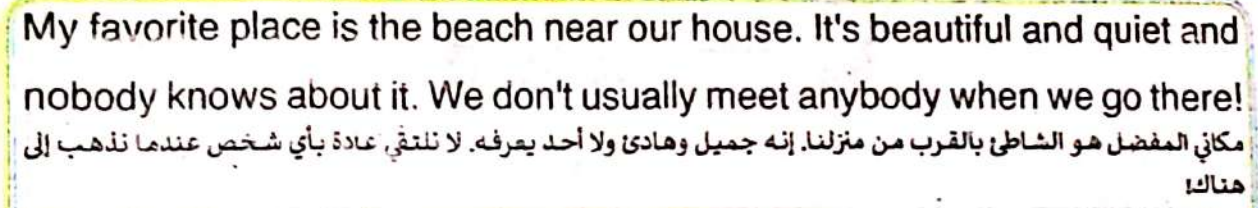


Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Lesson (2)



My favorite place is the beach near our house. It's beautiful and quiet and nobody knows about it. We don't usually meet anybody when we go there!

مكاني المفضل هو الشاطئ بالقرب من منزلنا. إنه جميل وهادئ ولا أحد يعرفه. لا نلتقي عادة بأي شخص عندما نذهب إلى هناك!

Somebody first took me to the Khan El-Khalili market when I was six. It's a fun place to visit and you can buy everything you need there! I bought something there last week. I think everybody who visits Cairo should come to this market!

أخذني أحدهم لأول مرة إلى سوق خان الخليلي عندما كنت في السادسة من عمري. إنه مكان ممتع للزيارة ويمكنك شراء كل ما تحتاجه هناك! اشتريت شيئا من هناك الأسبوع الماضي. أعتقد أن كل من يزور القاهرة يجب أن يأتي إلى هذا السوق!

Listen and read.



Hi, I'm Nesma. I love going to the park on the weekend. I meet my friends there, and we play games. It's a beautiful place, and everything in the park is clean. Nobody leaves garbage or drops litter. There's always something to see or do. Everybody in my family loves the park, too. Sometimes my mom and I play with my little sister Dalia, and my dad plays football with my brother Waleed.

مرحبا ، أنا نسمة. أحب الذهاب إلى الحديقة في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. أقابل أصدقائي هناك ، و نلعب الألعاب. إنه مكان جميل، وكل شيء في الحديقة نظيف. لا أحد يترك قمامة أو يلقي قمامة. هناك دائمًا شيء يمكن رؤيته أو القيام به. الجميع في عائلتي يحبون الحديقة، أيضًا. أحيانًا ألعب أنا وأمي مع أختي الصغيرة داليا ، ويلعب والدي كرة القدم مع أخي وليد.

Answer the following questions.

1. When does Nesma love going to the park?

....

2. Who plays with little sister Dalia?

....



Indefinite Pronouns

الضمائر الغير محددة

For people		For things	
everybody	كل شخص - الجميع	everything	شيء
somebody	شخصٌ ما	something	ما
anybody	أي شخص	anything	شيء
nobody	لا أحد	nothing	شيء

We use somebody and something to talk about things or people in genera

ستخدم (somebody) و (something) للتحدث عن أشياء أو أشخاص بشكل عام. (في الجمل المثبتة).

e.g. There's somebody at the door.

e.g. There's something on the table for you.

We use everybody and everything to talk about all people and things.

ستخدم (everything) و (everybody) للتحدث عن كل الأشخاص أو كل الأشياء. (في الجمل المثبتة).

e.g. She is polite, so everybody likes her.

e.g. Everything in this shop is made of wood.

We use nothing and nobody to talk about no things or people in general.

نستخدم (nothing) و (nobody) للتحدث عن عدم وجود أشياء أو أشخاص بشكل عام. (لاحظ أن الفعل هنا مثبت لوجود النفي في الكلمتين).

e.g. I have nothing to eat.

e.g. I saw nobody in the library.

In question and negative sentences, we can use anything or anybody.

نستخدم (anything) أو (anybody) في النفي والاستفهام.

e.g. Do you have anything in your bag?

No, I don't have anything in my bag.

e.g. Did you see anybody in the classroom?

No, I didn't see anybody in the classroom.

Help your child learn and use indefinite pronouns.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم ويستخدم الضمائر الغير محددة .



Practice

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I'm hungry. Is there .... to eat?
   a) everybody b) everything c) anything d) somebody
2. There is .... at the door. I think it's your friend.
   a) somebody b) nobody c) nothing d) something
3. Hana is really funny and .... likes her.
   a) anybody b) everybody c) anything d) something
4. That test was very difficult. Did .... do well in it?
   a) everybody b) everything c) anybody d) something
5. .... in this shop is made from recycled plastic.
   a) Everything b) Everybody c) Nobody d) Somebody
6. There is .... on the table for you. It's a present from grandpa!
   a) everybody b) everything c) somebody d) something
7. Is there .... you want, Injy?
   a) everybody b) anything c) somebody d) something
8. I bought .... we need this morning.
   a) everything b) somebody c) anything d) anybody
9. Is there .... here who can speak French?
   a) anybody b) somebody c) everybody d) nobody
10. I didn't meet .... at the party.
    a) nobody b) everybody c) somebody d) anybody



General Activities


Listen and answer the questions.

1 What's your favorite place?

....

2. Where's the sports center?

....

3 When do you go to the sports center?

....

4. Who do you have fun with?

....


Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

anybody - anything - everybody - everything - something

Mom : Look at this new bakery. Is there 1) .... you want, Injy

Injy : Yes, there is, and there isn't 2) .... inside. Can we bu
cakes before people arrive, Mom?

Mom : No! I bought 3) .... we need in the market this morning

Injy : But 4) .... says the cakes are really good here

Mom : Not today, Injy, but I'll buy you something next time.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hi, I'm Nesma. I love going to the park on the weekend. I meet my friends there, and we play games. It's a beautiful place, and everything i the park is clean. Nobody leaves garbage or drops litter. There's alwa something to see or do. Everybody in my family loves the park, to Sometimes my mom and I play with my little sister Dalia, and my dad pla football with my brother Waleed.

Help your child deal with such questions.
...طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The park is a .... place.
   a) bad   b) beautiful   c) small   d) dirty
2. Nobody drops .... in the park.
   a) flowers   b) letters   c) plants   d) litter

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Nesma love going?

....

4. What does dad play in the park?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I'm thirsty. Is there .... to drink?
   a) anything   b) everything   c) nothing   d) everybody
2. The test was very difficult. Did.. do well in it?
   a) everything   b) everybody   c) anybody   d) nobody
3. There's .... at home. I think it's my brother.
   a) somebody   b) anybody   c) nobody   d) something
4. I saw .... in the club. It was empty.
   a) everybody   b) everything   c) nobody   d) somebody

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite place

Guiding elements:

(sports center - on Friday - football - meet)

....

....

....

....

Lesson (3) AMAZING BUILDINGS

Famous buildings مباني مشهورة

Burj Khalifa	برج خليفة (دبي بالإمارات)
Sydney Opera House	دار أوبرا سيدني (استراليا)
Iconic Tower	البرج الإيقوني (مصر)
the New Administrative Capital	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة (مصر)
the Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري (مصر)
the Leaning Tower of Pisa	برج بيزا المائل (إيطاليا)
Karnak Temple	معبد الكرنك (مصر)
the Guggenheim Museum	متحف جوجنهايم (أسبانيا)
the Al-Dar Headquarters	مقر الدار (أبو ظبي بالإمارات)
the Roman amphitheater	المسرح الروماني المدرج (مصر)
the Citadel of Qaitbay	قلعة قايتباي (مصر)
the Grand Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري الكبير (مصر)

Extra vocabulary

performance	عرض - أداء	bottom	قاع	roof	سطح
environment	البيئة	square	مربع الشكل	steel	صلب - فولاذ
column	عمود	statue	تمثال	seats	مقاعد
unusual	غير معتاد	arch	شكل (قوس - قنطرة)	including	متضمنًا
modern	حديث - عصري	straight	شكل مستقيم	design	يصمم

Important expressions and prepositions

look like	يشبه	listen to	يستمع إلى
made of	مصنوع من (المادة الخام لا تتغير)	glass windows	نوافذ زجاجية
in the corner	في الزاوية	thick walls	حوائط سميكة



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Lesson (3)

Listen and read.



The Citadel of Qaitbay: It's a big square building with very thick walls. Almost everything is made of stone, and there are tall round towers in the corners of the building. It's a fort, and it was built to protect the city. Nobody could go in it when the doors were closed!

قلعة قايتباي: إنها مبنى مربع الشكل كبير بجدران سميكة للغاية. كل شيء تقريبًا مصنوع من الحجر ، وهناك أبراج مستديرة طويلة في زوايا المبنى. إنه حصن ، وقد تم بنائه لحماية المدينة. لا أحد يمكن أن يدخله عندما تكون الأبواب مغلقة!

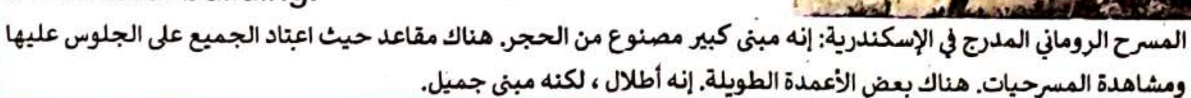


The Al-Dar Headquarters: Nothing is straight in this building! It is made of glass and steel. It's modern, so it doesn't have any towers, and there aren't any columns. It's an unusual building.

مقر الدار: لا شيء مستقيم الشكل في هذا المبنى! وهو مصنوع من الزجاج والصلب. إنه حديث، لذا فهو لا يحتوي على أي أبراج، وليس هناك أي أعمدة. إنه مبنى غير عادي.



The Roman amphitheater in Alexandria: It's a big building made of stone. There are seats where everybody used to sit and watch plays. There are some tall columns. It's a ruin, but it's a beautiful building.



المسرح الروماني المدرج في الإسكندرية: إنه مبنى كبير مصنوع من الحجر. هناك مقاعد حيث اعتاد الجميع على الجلوس عليها ومشاهدة المسرحيات. هناك بعض الأعمدة الطويلة. إنه أطلال ، لكنه مبنى جميل.



The Egyptian Museum, Cairo, Egypt: Everyone feels very small when they see the statues here.

المتحف المصري ، القاهرة ، مصر: الجميع يشعر بصغر الحجم جدًا عندما يرى التماثيل هنا.

Help your child listen and read the text.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.





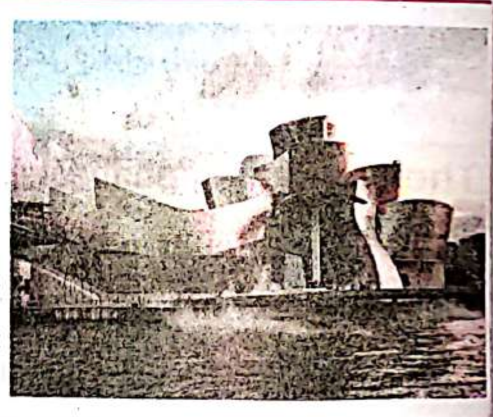
The Leaning Tower of Pisa, Italy: This building has lots of arches. There's something unusual about this tower.

برج بيزا المائل ، إيطاليا: يحتوي هذا المبنى على الكثير من الأقواس.
هناك شيء غير عادي عن هذا البرج.



Karnak Temple, Luxor, Egypt: The old buildings here are made of stone. There isn't anything made from glass. Everything inside this building is very old and important.

معبد الكرنك ، الأقصر ، مصر: المباني القديمة هنا مصنوعة من الحجر. لا يوجد أي شيء مصنوع من الزجاج. كل شيء داخل هذا المبنى قديم جدًا ومهم.



The Guggenheim Museum, Bilbao, Spain: This modern building is made of steel. Nothing is straight!

متحف جوجنهايم ، بلباو ، إسبانيا: هذا المبنى الحديث مصنوع من الفولاذ.
لا شيء مستقيم الشكل!

Answer the following questions.

1. Why was the Citadel of Qaitbay built?

....

2. Where is the Leaning Tower of Pisa?

....

3. What's the Guggenheim Museum made of?

....

Help your child listen and read the text.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What is the Citadel of Qaitbay?

....

2. What is it made of?

....

3. What are there in the corners of the building?

....

4. Why was the Citadel of Qaitbay built?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

steel - It's - unusual - Citadel - did

Ola : Did you read the lesson?

Amal : Yes, I 1) ....

Ola : Where is the Al-Dar Headquarters?

Amal : 2) .... in Abu Dhabi in Emirates.

Ola : What is it made of?

Amal : It's made of glass and 3) ....

Ola : What do you think of it?

Amal : I think it's an 4) .... building.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Leaning Tower of Pisa has lots of.. .

a) glass b) sand c) arches d) plastic

2. You feel very small when you see the .... in the Egyptian Museum.

a) arches b) statues c) horses d) seats

3. There's something .... in the Leaning Tower of Pisa.

a) unusual b) tiny c) formal d) informal

4. In Karnak Temple everything is made of ____________

a) cotton b) stone c) glass d) leather

5. Everything in the Egyptian ____________ is very old and impor

a) Club b) Stadium c) Tower d) Museum

6. Somebody ____________ this building to look like a b

a) did b) ruined c) designed d) broke

7. People live and work in ____________

a) Burj Khalifa b) the Egyptian Museum
c) Alexandria Library d) the Citadel of Qaitbay

8. People come to Sydney Opera House to watch ___ and to listen to mus

a) performances b) statues c) roofs d) arches

9. The Citadel of Qaitbay was built to ____________ the ci

a) design b) protect c) watch d) feel

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. amphitheater - The Roman - Alexandria - in - is - .

....

2. the building - There - columns - tall - some - are - in - .

....

3. unusual - tower - There's - this - about - something - .

....

4. the New - The Iconic - Administrative - in - will be - Capital - Tower - .

....

5. the - Everybody - city - see - this - in - can - tower - .

....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Burj Khalifa

Guiding elements:

(in Dubai - steel - glass windows - amazing - live and work)

Help your child deal with such questions.

حقك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Lesson (4) WHY WE DO THINGS



Key Vocabulary

shopping mall	مركز تسوق	rooftop	قمة السطح
architect	مهندس معماري	fountain	نافورة

Extra vocabulary

designs	تصميمات	builders	عمال بناء
restaurant	مطعم	excited	مسرور
designer	مصمم	stores	متاجر
movie theater	سينما	news	أخبار
plans	خطط	spices	توابل
plant	نبات - يزرع	café	مقهى

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
decide	يقرر	decided	decided
phone	يتصل	phoned	phoned
wait	ينتظر	waited	waited
relax	يسترخي	relaxed	relaxed
find	يجد	found	found
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
grow	يزرع - ينمو	grew	grown

Important expressions and prepositions

decide on	يتخذ قرار بشأن - يحدد	That sounds exciting!	هذا يبدو مثيرا!
by train	بالقطار	keep people cool	يحافظ على برودة الناس
great news	أخبار رائعة	I can't wait	لا أطيق الانتظار

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Listen and read.

Grandma : Do you like my new house, Nagwa?

ل يعجبك بيتي الجديد يا نجوى؟

Nagwa : Yes, but it's very big! I can't find Dad.

م ، لكنه كبير جدًا! لا أستطيع أن أجد أبي.

Grandma : He's in the living room! في غرفة المعيشة!

Nagwa : Oh, yes! What are you doing, Dad?

، أجل! ماذا تفعل يا أبي؟

Dad : I'm looking at these designs for the new shopping mall. I'm meeting the architects to decide on the plans tomorrow.

نا أنظر إلى هذه التصميمات لمركز التسوق الجديد. سأقابل المهندسين المعماريين لاتخاذ قرار بشأن الخطط غدًا.

Nagwa : That sounds exciting. What will be in the mall?

ذا يبدو مثيرا. ماذا سيكون في المركز التجاري "مول"؟

Dad : There'll be stores selling everything - clothes stores, shoe stores, and things for the home.

ستكون هناك متاجر تبيع كل شيء-متاجر الملابس ومحلات الأحذية وأشياء للمنزل.

Nagwa : Great, I love shopping! Can I go there to buy some new clothes?

رائع ، أحب التسوق! هل يمكنني الذهاب إلى هناك لشراء بعض الملابس الجديدة؟

Dad : You can when it's open! It will take about a year to build.

يمكنك عندما يتم افتتاحه! سوف يستغرق البناء حوالي عام.

Nagwa : That's a long time. Will there be anything for my friends to do there? ذا وقت طويل. هل سيكون هناك أي شيء يفعله أصدقائي هناك؟

Help your child listen and read the dialog.
عد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ الحوار.



: Yes, there'll also be lots of cafés with tables and chairs outside.
نعم ، سيكون هناك أيضًا الكثير من المقاهي مع طاولات وكراسي بالخارج.

Nagwa : That's nice! Will it be too hot, though?
هذا لطيف! ولكن هل سيكون الجو حارا جدًا، إذًا؟

Dad : No, we're planting lots of plants there to keep people cool. It will look nice, and it will be good for the environment, too.
لا ، نحن نزرع الكثير من النباتات هناك للحفاظ على برودة الناس. سوف يبدو لطيفًا ، وسوف يكون جيدًا للبيئة أيضًا.

Nagwa : Yes, lots of new buildings have plants growing in them - or on the roof. People make rooftop gardens to get more nature into our cities. Is there anything else for my friends?
نعم ، الكثير من المباني الجديدة بها نباتات تنمو فيها - أو على السطح. يقوم الناس بعمل حدائق على السطح للحصول على المزيد من الطبيعة في مدننا. هل هناك أي شيء آخر لأصدقائي؟



Dad : Yes, there's a movie theater there, and a big fountain to sit next to.
نعم ، يوجد دار سينما هناك ، ونافورة كبيرة للجلوس بجانبها.

Nagwa : I can't wait to see it, Dad! Everybody will love it.
لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتها يا أبي! فالجميع سيحبها.

Answer the following questions.

1. Where's Nagwa's dad?

....

2. What will be in the mall?

....

3. Why are they planting lots of plants in the mall?

....



Listen and read.



Hi Talia. I've got some great news! We will soon have a new shopping mall in our city and I'm very excited! We need a new shopping mall. The shopping mall will have something for everybody! There'll be different stores where you can buy everything you want. We can meet there to go shopping. There'll be restaurants and cafés, too. So, it'll be a fun place to eat. I hope m mom and dad take us there to have lunch. And there'll also be a mo theater. I can't wait to go. It'll be a great place to meet friends. Would y like to meet me there? It'll be a nice place to visit because there's goi to be an amazing rooftop garden! There will be lots of trees and plan inside. The plants will make it cool, so I think lots of people will want to there to sit and relax. I think it will be beautiful, too. I can't wait for the ne shopping mall to open!

با تاليا. لدي بعض الأخبار الرائعة! سيكون لدينا قريبًا مركز تسوق جديد في مدينتنا وأنا متحمسة جدًا! نحن بحاجة مركز تسوق جديد. سيكون بمركز التسوق شيء للجميع! ستكون هناك متاجر مختلفة حيث يمكنك شراء كل ما تريديه. لننا أن نلتقي هناك للذهاب للتسوق. ستكون هناك مطاعم ومقاهي أيضًا. لذلك ، سيكون مكانا ممتعا لتناول الطعام. آمل اخذنا أمي وأبي إلى هناك لتناول الغداء. وسيكون هناك أيضًا سينما. لا أستطيع الانتظار للذهاب. سيكون مكانا رائعا للقاء مدقاء. هل ترغبي في مقابلتي هناك؟ سيكون مكانا رائعًا للزيارة لأنّه ستكون هناك حديقة مذهلة على السطح! سيكون هناك ير من الأشجار والنباتات في الداخل. ستجعله النباتات باردًا ، لذلك أعتقد أن الكثير من الناس سيرغبون في الذهاب إلى هناك لوس والاسترخاء. أعتقد أنها ستكون جميلة أيضًا. لا أستطيع الانتظار حتى يُفتح مركز التسوق الجديد!

Answer the following questions.

1. Where can we have meals in the shopping mall?

....

2. How will the shopping mall be cool?

....

Help your child listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

Infinitive of purpose

التعبير عن الغرض باستخدام مصدر الفعل

to (لكي) + **inf.** (المصدر)

نستخدم (to + inf) لبيان الغرض وهي إجابة عن سؤال بأداة الاستفهام "Why".

e.g. Why do you go to school?

e.g. I go to school to learn.

e.g. People will visit the shopping mall to go shopping.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mom goes to the café .... and relax.
   a) sit b) to sit c) sitting d) sat
2. They have planted lots of trees and plants .... the place cool.
   a) making b) to making c) to make d) made
3. People will go up to the rooftop garden to .... at the view.
   a) look b) looks c) to look d) to look
4. Can I go there .... some new clothes?
   a) buys b) buy c) to buy d) bought
5. I'm going to the movie theater .... new movies.
   a) to watching b) to watch c) watch d) watching
6. I go to the club .... my friends.
   a) to meet b) meets c) meet d) to meeting
7. Designers use plants and fountains .... keep the building cool.
   a) of b) on c) for d) to
8. .... do people go to the beach? - To swim.
   a) What b) Why c) Where d) Who

General Activities



1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What will Ahmed's family do soon?

....

2. What will they use?

....

3. How is Ahmed?

....

4. How does the internet help Ahmed?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

October - Friday - online - do - clothes

Amir : Do you like shopping?

Ahmed : Yes, I 1) ....

Amir : When do you go shopping?

Ahmed : I go shopping on 2) ....

Amir : What do you like buying by yourself?

Ahmed : I like buying my 3) ....

Amir : What about 4) .... shopping

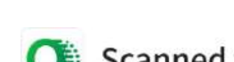
Ahmed : I don't like it.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. These are the .... for the new shopping ma

a) signs b) designs c) clouds d) clubs

Help your child deal with such questions.
طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



2. .... are people who design buildings.

   a) Architects   b) Teachers   c) Doctors   d) Farmers

3. We can buy things at the .... of the shopping mall.

   a) pools   b) stalks   c) stories   d) stores

4. We are planting lots of plants to keep people ....

   a) warm   b) cool   c) call   d) hot

5. People make .... gardens to get more nature into cities.

   a) rooftip   b) roof bottom   c) roof   d) rooftop

6. A .... gets out water.

   a) fountain   b) mall   c) store.   d) rooftop

7. I've got great .... ! We'll soon have a new shopping mall.

   a) talks   b) new   c) news   d) noise

8. We can have lunch at a ....

   a) library   b) restaurant   c) hospital   d) bakery

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. mall - **The shopping** - for - everybody - something - have - will - .

   ....

2. like - **Do** - house - new - my - you - ?

   ....

3. something - the - **There** - on - is - table - .

   ....



5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I've got some great news! We will soon have a new shopping mall our city and I'm very excited! We need a new shopping mall. The shoppi- mall will have something for everybody! There'll be different stores where yo can buy everything you want. We can meet there to go shopping. There'll b restaurants and cafés, too. So, it'll be a fun place to eat. I hope my mom and dad take us there to have lunch. And there'll also be a movie theater. I can't wait to go. It'll be a great place to meet friends. Would you like to meet me there? There will be an amazing rooftop garden to keep people cool! There will be lots of trees and plants inside.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There will be different .... in the new shopping mal

   a) classes b) clubs c) stores d) stories

2. The underlined word "excited" means to be very ....

   a) happy b) sad c) polite d) angry

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where can we watch movies?

   ....

4. Why will people want to go to the rooftop garden?

   ....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

The new shopping mall

Guiding elements:

(new - stores - restaurant - a movie theater - trees and plants inside)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lesson (5) A VISIT TO THE DESERT

Key Vocabulary

bucket	جردل - دلو	bright	لامعة - ساطعة
fossils	حفريات	curved	منحنى
bushes	شجيرات	oasis	واحة
date palms	أشجار النخيل	lake	بحيرة

Extra vocabulary

circle	دائرة	huge	ضخم
silver	فضي	imagine	يتخيل
fresh	طازج	thin	رفيع
whale	حوت	garlic	ثوم
desert	صحراء	lucky	محظوظ
onions	بصل	objects	أشياء

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
pull	يسحب	pulled	pulled
smile	يبتسم	smiled	smiled
catch	يمسك - يلحق - يصطاد	caught	caught
drive	يقود - يسوق	drove	driven
think	يعتقد - يفكر	thought	thought
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Important expressions and prepositions

fishing boat	قارب صيد	go swimming	يسبح
for dinner	على العشاء	I'd love to...	أود - أرغب أن...
by the sea	بجوار البحر	the hot dry desert	الصحراء الحارة الجافة
sand dunes	كثبان رملية	strange shapes	أشكال غريبة
climate change	تغير المناخ		

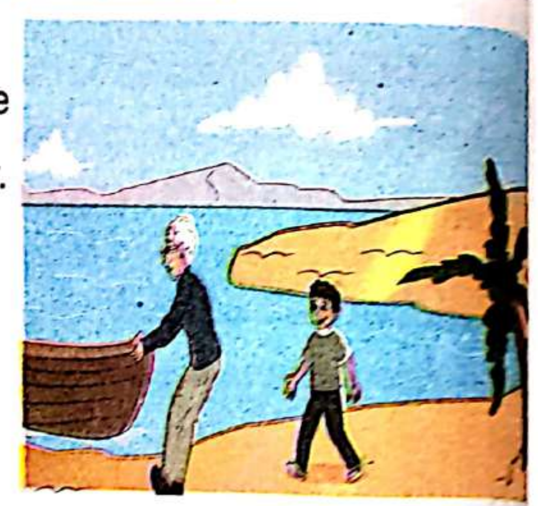
Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Listen and read how did grandpa and Younis travel in the desert?

A whale in the desert

Younis was walking through the date palms near his home. It was hot and the sun was a bright yellow circle in the sky. Tall green grass and bushes grew next to the path to the lake. Younis saw his grandpa pulling his fishing boat out of the water.



يونس يسير عبر أشجار النخيل بالقرب من منزله. كان الجو حارا وكانت الشمس عبارة عن دائرة صفراء ساطعة في السماء
العشب الأخضر الطويل والشجيرات بجانب الطريق إلى البحيرة. رأى يونس جده يسحب قارب الصيد من الماء

"Hello, Grandpa!" he said. "Did you catch anything today?"

يونس: "مرحبا ، جدي!" "هل اصطدت أي شيء اليوم؟"

"Yes, I did!" Grandpa showed Younis a bucket of thin silver fish.

نعم ، فعلت!"أظهر الجد ليونس دلو من سمك صغير فضي.

"Fantastic," said Younis. "We can have fish for dinner."

يونس: "رائع". "يمكننا تناول السمك على العشاء"

"We can cook them with onions, garlic, and spices," said Grandpa.

جدي "يمكننا طهيها بالبصل والثوم والتوابل."

"Mom has fresh tomatoes, too," said Younis.

قال يونس:" أمي لديها طماطم طازجة أيضًا".

"We can grow many things in the oasis, can't we? And we're lucky to have fresh fish, when we're a long way from the sea,"said Grandpa.

قال الجد"نحن يمكن أن نزرع أشياء كثيرة في الواحة أليس كذلك؟ و نحن محظوظون لأن لدينا أسماك طازجة ، عندما نكون بعيدين عن البحر"

"I'd love to live by the sea!" said Younis. "I'd go swimming every day."

قال يونس: "أرغب في العيش بجانب البحر!" "سأذهب للسباحة كل يوم."

"Did you know that there used to be a sea where we're standing now?"

قال الجد: "هل تعلم أنه كان يوجد بحر حيث نحن نقف الآن؟"

Help your child listen and read the text.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

Lesson (5)



Younis looked at the sand dunes. "Here? But we're a long way from the sea, Grandpa."

نظر يونس إلى الكثبان الرملية. وقال "هنا؟ لكننا بعيدون جدًا عن البحر ، يا جدي."

Grandpa smiled. "Tomorrow, I'll take you into the desert and show you something so you'll understand."

ابتسم الجد قائلًا "غدًا ، سآخذك إلى الصحراء وأريك شيئًا حتى تفهم."

The next day, Grandpa drove Younis through the desert. Younis looked at the sand under the blue sky. There was no water here. "Grandpa is wrong!" he thought. After some time, Grandpa stopped. They got out and walked for a short time. Soon, they saw strange shapes. There were hard white shapes in the sand. Some were straight lines, some were round, and some were curved.

و في اليوم التالي ، قاد الجد يونس عبر الصحراء. نظر يونس إلى الرمال تحت السماء الزرقاء. لم يكن هناك ماء هنا. "الجد مخطئ!"اعتقد ذلك يونس. و بعد مرور بعض الوقت ، توقف الجد. خرجا وسارا لفترة قصيرة. وسرعان ما رأوا أشكالا غريبة. كانت هناك أشكال بيضاء صلبة في الرمال. كان بعضها خطوطا مستقيمة ، وبعضها مستدير ، وبعضها منحني.

"Can you see what they are, Younis?" Grandpa asked.

سأل الجد "هل يمكنك أن ترى ماذا تكون هذه الأشياء يا يونس؟"

"They look like big fish!" said Younis.

قال يونس: "إنها تبدو مثل سمكة كبيرة!"

"You're almost right. These are whale fossils. Where do whales live?"

"أنت على حق تقريبًا. هذه حفريات الحيتان. أين تعيش الحيتان؟"

"In the sea!" said Younis.

قال يونس"في البحر!"

"That's right. Forty million years ago, everything here was sea. Imagine that!"

"هذا صحيح. منذ أربعين مليون سنة ، كان كل شيء هنا بحرًا. تخيل ذلك!"

Younis closed his eyes and imagined being under the water. He thought about fish all around him, and a big whale swimming past.

أغلق يونس عينيه وتخيل أن يكون تحت الماء. فكر في الأسماك من حوله ، وحوت كبير يسبح بجواره.

"Wow, Grandpa. I never thought I would see whales in the dry yellow desert!" he said.

قال يونس"واو ، جدي. لم أعتقد أبدًا أنني سأرى الحيتان في الصحراء الصفراء الجافة!"

Help your child listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where was Younis walking?

____

2. What was the weather like?

____

3. Who did Younis see?

____

4. What did Grandpa show Younis?

____

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

fossils - to - oasis - told - black

Younis' grandpa 1)............ him there used 2)............ be sea where the 3)............ is now. Younis couldn't believe his grandpa. His grandpa showed him some large white shapes. They looked like rocks. They were huge ancient whale 4)............ .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Younis was walking through the date ....

   a) palms b) plants c) grass d) flowers

2. It was hot and the sun was a .... yellow circle in the sky.

   a) pale b) bright c) sight d) night

3. Tall green grass and .... grew next to the path to the lake.

   a) buckets b) sharks c) bushes d) fossils

4. Grandpa showed Younis a .... of thin silver fish.

   a) pack b) bike c) beak d) bucket

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5. Grandpa and Younis found whale .... in the desert.

a) legs b) fossils c) feasts d) faxes

6. Some shapes of the whale were round and some were ....

a) curved b) scared c) carved d) cured

7. Younis lived near a/an.. in Fayoum.

a) river b) ocean c) planet d) oasis

8. Younis saw his grandpa pulling his fishing boat out of the ....

a) fossil b) lake c) coast d) desert

9. They drove through the hot dry ....

a) desert b) ocean c) river d) lake

10. They saw tall .... dunes in the desert.

a) oil b) water c) sand d) stone

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Younis - Grandpa - fish - fresh - of - a bucket - showed - .

....

2. inside - be - There - will - plants - and - trees - .

....

3. water - and - An oasis - some - has - plants - fresh - .

....

4. you - What - in an oasis - grow - food - can - ?

....

5. is - it - Why - in an oasis - to live-good - ?

....



5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The Wadi Hitan Fossil and Climate Change Museum is a beauti curved building in the desert near Fayoum. The museum looks like the larg rocks in the desert. The museum was built in Wadi Hitan because of th amazing whale fossils that people found in the desert. Inside the museu there is the largest complete whale fossil in the world. It is 37 million yea old and 18 meters long. There are shark and crocodile fossils here, to People come here to find out about a big change in the area. This area use to be the sea. Whales and sharks used to swim here millions of years ago but now the water is gone. The area is a desert.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The area used to be the ....

   a) ocean b) lake c) river d) sea

2. The general idea of the text is about whale ....

   a) paintings b) cars c) fossils d) desert

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why was the museum built in Wadi Hitan?

....

4. What's inside the museum?

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Wadi Hitan

Guiding elements:

(beautiful curved - desert - near Fayoum - amazing - whale fossils - shark and crocodiles fossils)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (6) WRITING A DESCRIPTION

Key Vocabulary

describe	يصف	national park	محمية وطنية
description	وصف	snorkeling	الغطس بالقناع وأنبوب التنفس
competition	مسابقة	mask	قناع
Sharm El-Sheikh	شرم الشيخ	snorkel	أنبوب تنفس

Extra vocabulary

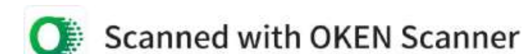
Ras Muhammed	رأس محمد	market	سوق
quickly	بسرعة	photos	صور
loudly	بصوت عالي	knee	ركبة
amazing	مذهل	honey	عسل
ice cream	أيس كريم	figs	تين
yogurt	زبادي	dessert	حلو بعد الأكل
sayadeya	سمك صياديه	pretty	جميل
breathe	يتنفس	sick	مريض

Important expressions and prepositions

had to	اضطر ان	in an old truck	في شاحنة قديمة
get to	يصل إلى	in the evening	في المساء
on vacation	في عطلة	It was a lot of fun.	كان أمر ممتعا جدًا.
for breakfast	على الإفطار	the clear warm water	المياه الصافية الدافئة
talk loudly	يتكلم بصوت عالٍ	feel sick	يشعر بالأعياء
bright colorful fish	سمك زاهي الألوان	tried snorkeling	قام بتجربة رياضة الغطس

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.





Tip!

When you write a description, think about what you saw, what you did, a
how you felt. Always use adjectives and adverbs to make your writing mo
interesting. When you have finished, check your work carefully. Can y
improve anything?

ما تكتب وصفًا ، فكر في ما رأيته, ماذا فعلت ، وكيف شعرت. استخدم دائمًا الصفات والظروف لجعل كتابتك أكثر تشويقًا.
الانتهاء ، تحقق من عملك بعناية. هل يمكنك تحسين أي شيء؟

Describing a day out

ف يوم التنزه

Say where you were and what you did. — ر إين كنت وماذا فعلت.

Use informal language and a mix of punctuation

تخدم لغة غير رسمية ومزيج من علامات الترقيم.

Use adverbs to describe how things happened.

تخدم أحوال لوصف كيف حدثت الأشياء.

Use different adjectives. — تخدم صفات مختلفة.

Read the competition entry. What did they see in the water

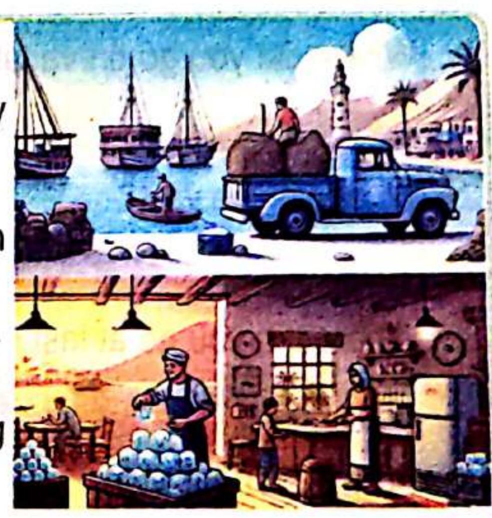
School competition

We went to Sharm El-Sheikh on vacation. It was a lot of fun! On the la
day, we got a boat to visit Ras Muhammed National Park. I liked the bo
trip, but my little brother Adam felt sick. He had to sit on Mom's kne
When we got to the national park, we tried snorkeling. It was amazin
We wore masks over our faces and used a snorkel to breathe underwate
We loved swimming in the clear warm water. We saw bright colorful fis
swimming quickly around us, and some beautiful tall sea plants, too.
Amira, aged 11

هبنا إلى شرم الشيخ في إجازة. كان الأمر ممتعًا جدًا! في اليوم الأخير ، أخذنا قاربًا لزيارة محمية رأس محمد الوطنية. أحببت
رحلة القارب، ولكن شعر أخي الصغير آدم بالمرض. واضطر أن يجلس على ركبة أمي! وعندما وصلنا إلى المحمية الوطنية ، حاولنا
الغطس. كان الأمر مذهلًا! كنا نرتدي الأقنعة على وجوهنا واستخدما أنبوب تنفس لنتنفس تحت الماء. لقد أحببنا السباحة في
الماء الدافئ الصافي. رأينا الأسماك الملونة الزاهية تسبح بسرعة من حولنا ، وبعض نباتات البحر الطويلة الجميلة أيضًا.
أميرة ، ١١ سنة

Help your child listen and read the text.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

the competition entry. Who was Talia staying with vacation?



It was the first day of my vacation. I felt so happy and excited! Everybody got up early and we ate fruit and yogurt with honey for breakfast. Then we walked to the harbor in Hurghada and looked at the pretty blue fishing boats. I saw a man in an old truck. He was selling ice to the men in the fishing boats. After that, we quickly walked to the fish market because it was getting late. Mom wanted to buy some fresh fish to cook for dinner. It was a colorful market and people were talking loudly. It was very exciting! We bought four big gray fish and some fresh figs, I really love figs! They're my favorite fruit. Then we went back to Grandma's house where we were staying. In the evening, I helped Mom make sayadeya for dinner with the fish from the market. And then we had figs and ice cream for dessert. It's my favorite! It was a great day!

كان اليوم الأول من عطلتي. شعرت بسعادة وكنت متحمسة جدًا! استيقظ الجميع مبكرا وأكلنا الفاكهة والزبادي مع العسل على الإفطار. ثم مشينا إلى الميناء في الغردقة ونظرنا إلى قوارب الصيد الزرقاء الجميلة. رأيت رجلا في شاحنة قديمة. كان يبيع الثلج للرجال الموجودين في قوارب الصيد. وبعد ذلك ، مشينا بسرعة إلى سوق السمك لأن الوقت تأخر. أرادت أمي شراء بعض الأسماك الطازجة لطهيها على العشاء. كان سوقا بألوان زاهية وكان الناس يتحدثون بصوتٍ عالٍ. كان مثيرًا للغاية! اشترينا أربعة أسماك رمادية كبيرة وبعض التين الطازج ، أنا حقًا أحب التين! إنها الفاكهة المفضلة لدي. ثم عدنا إلى منزل الجدة حيث كنا نقيم. وفي المساء ، ساعدت أمي في صنع الصيادية لنتناوله في العشاء مع السمك الذي اشتريناه من السوق. ثم تناولنا التين والآيس كريم للتحلية بعد الأكل. إنه المفضل لدي! كان يومٌ رائعًا!

Answer the following questions.

1. Why did Talia feel excited and happy?

....

2. What food did they buy at the market?

....

General Activities

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where did you go on vacation?

____

2. What did you visit?

____

3. Where did you go at last?

____

4. How was the lunch?

____

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

Hurghada - market - fruit - vacation - breakfast

It was the first day of my vacation. I felt so happy and excited! Everybody got up early and we ate 1).................... and yogurt with hon... for 2).................... Then we walked to the harbor in 3).................... . Af... that, we quickly walked to the fish 4).................... because it was getting lat...

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We went to Sharm El-Sheikh on ....
   a) vacation b) club c) hotel d) station
2. We got a boat to visit Ras Muhammed National....................
   a) Stadium b) Park c) Club d) Team
3. In snorkeling we wear masks and use ....
   a) gloves b) snorkels c) rings d) shirts
4. Snorkels help us .... underwate...
   a) run b) sit c) feel d) breathe

Help your child deal with such questions.
...طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

. We bought some fresh .... to eat.

a) figs b) gates c) woods d) deserts

. I felt so happy and ....

a) excited b) sad c) exciting d) unhappy

. We had some ice cream for ....

a) desert b) dessert c) masks d) prizes

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. go - Where - vacation - on - Amira - did - ?

....

2. water - We - swimming - clear - loved - in the - .

....

3. make - sayadeya - We - dinner - for - helped - .

....

4. trip - Did - boat - the - enjoy - everyone - ?

....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Vacation

Guiding elements:

1- Where did you go?
2- How did you go?
3- What did you see and do?
4- How was your feeling?

....

....

....

....



Lesson (7) STORY

Key Vocabulary

frightened خائف	loudly
wave يلوح بيده	glad
surprised مندهش - متفاجئ	hit يضرب



Extra vocabulary

railway line خط سكة حديد	hill
station محطة	quiet
lights أضواء	windy رياح
fox ثعلب	flag
fields حقول	driver
expensive غالي الثمن	sweater

Definitions

glad	happy about something
loudly	with a lot of noise
hit	go into something quickly or hard يصدم
wave	move your hand, or something in your hand up and do[wn]
frightened	feeling afraid because you think something bad will happen مرعوب
surprised	the feeling you have when you don't expect something متفاجئ

Help your child identify these words.

Lesson (7)

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
wave	يلوح بيده	waved	waved
move	يتحرك - ينتقل	moved	moved
leave	يغادر - يترك	left	left
fall	يقع	fell	fallen

Important expressions and prepositions

arrive in	يصل إلى (مكان كبير)	You did the right.	فعلت الصواب.
angry with	غاضب من	pass up and down	يمر صعودا وهبوطا
night	في الليل	It's a good place to...	أنه مكان جيد لـ....
the train	على متن القطار	take it off	يخلع
the countryside	في الريف		

and read.

The Railway Children, by E. Nesbit

Roberta, Phyllis, and Peter lived in a large house in London, England. One day, their father had to leave them to work in another country.

"This house is too expensive for us.
While father is away, we must leave London and move to a smaller house in the countryside," said their mother.

Their new house was near a railway. They arrived in the night and walked to the house from the station.

"Why is it so dark?" said Roberta. At night in London, there were always lots of bright colorful lights.

"There are no street lights in the countryside," said their mother.

"And why is it so quiet?" asked Peter. In London, everybody walked quickly and talked loudly.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



"There are not many people in the countryside," said their mother.

That night, the children did not sleep. It was quiet, but they could hea animals calling in the night.

"I'm frightened," said Phyllis."I don't like it here."

Everything looked very different in the morning. The house was sm but its rooms were sunny, and from their bedroom window, they could s beautiful green trees and fields.

One day, the children were walking near the railway. It was a very windy d and Peter was very surprised when he saw a big old tree. It was moving!

"Look!" he said. "The tree is falling on to the railway!

"What can we do?" said Phyllis. "A train will hit it!"

"A train will be here soon," said Roberta.

"Peter, your sweater is red. Take it off."

"Why?" he asked.

"We can make a flag with it. A red flag means stop!"

They ran back along the railway to a hill. When the train came, they waved the sweater to stop it!

The train was very fast, but the driver saw the red sweater and quickly stopped the train before it hit the tree.

"Thank you, children!" the driver said. "You helped everybody on this train. You did the right thing!"

That night, they heard animals calling again in the dark.

"Are you still frightened of the countryside, Phyllis?" her mother asked.

"No, I know it is just a fox," said Phyllis.

"I didn't know what it was when we first arrived here."

"I like living here," said Peter.

"I'll be glad when we go back to London," said Roberta, "but I understand life in the countryside now. It's a good place to live."

Help your child listen and read the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ القصة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where did the children live?

....

2. Why did their father leave them?

....

3. Where must they move to?

....

4. Where was their new house?

....

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box:

frightened - glad - hit - loudly - surprised

1. When the boring film finished, I was ....
2. The car was going fast and .... a tree.
3. The children were talking ....
4. The children feel .... of the dark at night.

3 Read and match.

1. The children waved to the people on the train — a. to be friendly.
2. In the countryside, they did not have street lights — b. to make a flag.
3. Peter took off his sweater — c. to stop the train.
4. They waved the flag — d. to see on the dark road.

1- ( )　　2- ( )　　3- ( )　　4- ( )



4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... means happy about somethin

   a) Sad b) Glad c) Bad d) Loud

2. He speaks with a lot of noise. He speaks ....

   a) quietly b) slowly c) loudly d) sadly

3. They .... to me. They move their hands up and dow

   a) leave b) feel c) wave d) hit

4. Peter took .... the sweater to make a flag

   a) of b) off c) at d) in

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the flag - **They** - the train - stop - to - waved - .

   ....

2. Phyllis - **Why** - the countryside - in - isn't - frightened - ?

   ....

3. stopped - thanked - **The driver** - and - the train - the children - .

   ....

4. live - **Where** - to - like - you - would - ?

   ....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A story you read

Guiding elements:

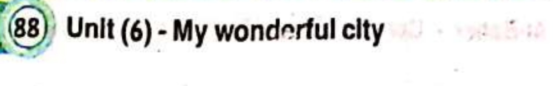
(amazing - first - next - after that - finally)

....

....

....

....



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Writing Corner

A famous Landmark

The Citadel of Qaitbay is a big square building with very thick walls. Almost everything is made of stone, and there are tall round towers in the corners of the building. It's a fort, and it was built to protect the city. Nobody could go in it when the doors were closed!

A day out

Hi, friends. I want to tell you about one of my days out. I went to the Orman Garden. It's in Giza. I went there with my family. It's a big place with lots of trees and plants. My dad had a camera so he took a lot of photos. I played with my brother and sisters. We had a cool lunch there. We sang loudly. We walked through the park happily. It was a wonderful day!

A vacation

We went to Alexandria on vacation. It was a lot of fun! On the last day, we got a boat to visit Montazaa. I liked the boat trip. When we reached there, we tried snorkeling. It was amazing! We wore masks over our faces and used a snorkel to breathe underwater. We loved swimming in the clear warm water. We saw bright colorful fish swimming quickly around us.

Your favorite place

My favorite place is the sports center in our village. Everybody goes to the sports center on Thursday night. We meet all our friends, play sports, and have fun. My favorite place is the café next to my grandparents' house. Don't eat anything before you go there. The cakes are very big and there is nothing there I don't like.

Dictation on Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

....	ميناء	....	ن - حصن
....	ترام	....	رض أحياء مائية
....	مسار للدراجات	....	ن - معرض
....	جامعة	....	يت
....	أطلال	....	ة مرور

Lesson (2)

....	شبه جزيرة سيناء	....	ة
....	يلقي قمامة	....	خبز
....	لذيذ	....	امة
....	جوعان	....	طلة صيفية
....	هادئ	....	جوار

Lesson (3)

....	عرض - أداء	....	ع
....	البيئة	....	تمثال
....	عمود	....	قاعد
....	غير معتاد	....	صلب
....	حديث - عصري	....	سطح

Lesson (4)

....	مركز تسوق	....	صمم
....	مهندس معماري	....	سينما
....	قمة السطح	....	مقهى
....	نافورة	....	تاجر
....	مطعم	....	عمال بناء

Lessons (5 & 6)

....	جردل - دلو	....	سابقة
....	حفريات	....	محمية وطنية
....	أشجار النخيل	....	قناع
....	واحة	....	أنبوب تنفس
....	بحيرة	....	رصيف

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.



Review on Unit (6)

Vocabulary

planetarium	مبنى القبة السماوية	harbor	مرفأ - ميناء	university	جامعة
aquarium	معرض الأحياء المائية	display	عرض	tram	ترام
bike paths	مسارات الدراجات	ruins	أطلال	fort	حصن
shopping mall	مركز تجاري "تسوق"	rooftop	أعلى السطح	fountain	نافورة
architect	مهندس معماري	bright	لامعة - ساطعة	bushes	شجيرات
date palms	أشجار النخيل	bucket	دلو	curved	منحني
glad	سعيد	fossils	حفريات	wave	يلوح بيديه
snorkeling	الغطس بقناع وأنبوب تنفس	loudly	بصوتٍ عالٍ	frightened	خائف

Amazing Buildings

Burj Khalifa	برج خليفة (دبي بالإمارات)
Sydney Opera House	دار أوبرا سيدني (استراليا)
Iconic Tower	البرج الأيقوني (مصر)
the New Administrative Capital	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة (مصر)
the Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري (مصر)
the Leaning Tower of Pisa	برج بيزا المائل (إيطاليا)
Karnak Temple	معبد الكرنك (مصر)
the Guggenheim Museum	متحف جوجنهايم (أسبانيا)
the AlDar Headquarters	مقر الدار (أبو ظبي بالإمارات)
the Roman amphitheater	المسرح الروماني المدرج (مصر)
the Citadel of Qaitbay	قلعة قايتباي (مصر)
the Grand Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري الكبير (مصر)

Help your child revise unit (6).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السادسة.



Indefinite Pronouns

الضمائر الغير محددة

For people		For things	
everybody	كل شخص - الجميع	everything	ل شيء
somebody	شخصٌ ما	something	يء ما
anybody	اي شخص	anything	ي شيء
nobody	لا احد	nothing	شيء

ستخدم (somebody) و (something) للتحدث عن أشياء أو أشخاص بشكل عام. (في الجمل المثبتة).

e.g. There's somebody at the door.

e.g. There's something on the table for you.

ستخدم (everything) و (everybody) للتحدث عن كل الأشخاص أو كل الأشياء. (في الجمل المثبتة).

e.g. She is polite, so everybody likes her.

e.g. Everything in this shop is made of wood.

ستخدم (nothing) و (nobody) للتحدث عن عدم وجود أشياء أو أشخاص بشكل عام. (لاحظ أن الفعل هنا مثبت لوجود النفي في الكلمتين).

e.g. I have nothing to eat.

e.g. I saw nobody in the library.

ستخدم (anything) أو (anybody) في النفي والاستفهام.

e.g. Do you have anything in your bag?

No, I don't have anything in my bag.

e.g. Did you see anybody in the classroom?

No, I didn't see anybody in the classroom.

Infinitive of purpose

التعبير عن الغرض باستخدام مصدر الفعل

to (لكي) + **inf.** (المصدر)

ستخدم (to + inf) لبيان الغرض وهي إجابة عن سؤال بأداة الاستفهام "Why".

e.g. Why do you go to school? **e.g.** I go to school to learn.

e.g. People will visit the shopping mall to go shopping.

Help your child revise unit (6).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السادسة.



Exam On Unit (6)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where is Heba? ....
2. When do they always go to Dahab? ....
3. How is the sun? ....
4. What do you have to put on your skin? ....

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box:

come - good - hotel - club - Why

Samy : Where are you going?
Jenny : I'm going to the 1) ....
Samy : 2) .... are you going there?
Jenny : To play football.
Samy : Are you 3) .... at playing football?
Jenny : Yes, I am.
Samy : Can I 4) .... with you?
Jenny : Yes, of course.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

How do you sleep? When a horse sleeps, its eyes are closed. When a fish sleeps, its eyes are open. A bat sleeps upside down. A bird sleeps sitting up. Sleep is something we all do. But some people need to sleep more than others. Babies sleep most of the time. Children sleep about ten or twelve hours. Most adults sleep only seven or eight hours. We all need to sleep because all the parts of our bodies have to rest. We can say that the parts of our body get tired too. The part that needs the most rest is our brain because it does most of the work. When an arm or a leg works hard, it works hard with them.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A fish sleeps with its eyes ....
   a) closed   b) open   c) up   d) down
2. .... sleep most of the time.
   a) Children   b) Adults   c) Babies   d) Fish





B) Answer the following questions.

3. How does a horse sleep? ....

4. How many hours do children sleep? ....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Fares moved from Cairo because his mom had a new job. ( )
2. Waleed visited Fares with his mom and dad. ( )

B Complete the following.

1. Fares lived in ______________ with his parents and his granddad
2. Granddad studied hard and played ______________ in a park

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I had to ask ______________ for directions.
   a) something b) everything c) anybody d) somebody
2. Have you got ______________ to eat?
   a) everything b) everybody c) nothing d) anything
3. He took a camera with him ______________ some photos.
   a) to take b) to taking c) took d) taking
4. There isn't ______________ in the class. It's empty.
   a) somebody b) something c) anybody d) nobody

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a red - The children - the train - to stop - flag - used - .

....

2. quickly - cakes - Can - some - buy - we - ?

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about: The Pyramids

Guiding elements:

(in Giza - huge - stone - famous - tourists - photos - amazing)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

On Review (3)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When did you start a new school? ....
2. How were you at the new school? ....
3. Who did you make friends with? ....
4. How are you now? ....

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box:

something - paths - city - aquarium - anything

Hi Peter! It's great that you're coming to visit us. Is there 1).................. special you want to do? There are many things to see in my 2)..................... Everybody who comes here loves it! We can go to the 3)................ to see the sea life if you like. You told me you enjoy riding a bike, so we can go on the bike 4)................

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I'm on vacation with my family in Dahab near the Red Sea. We always go camping in the summer. I love sleeping under the stars. I usually help my dad to put up the tent. The beaches are amazing. We go swimming in the sea every day. The water is so warm. The sun's really hot, though. You have to put on sunscreen so you don't burn. We usually have a picnic on the beach. Mum takes all our favorite food. I always make new friends on vacation, too. I met some children from Cairo, and they're camping near us. We're going to go hiking tomorrow in the mountains. We hope to record a video with our phones!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a) vacation b) fruit c) subject d) sport
2. The underlined word "near" is opposite to ....
   a) long b) far c) short d) small

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where do you love sleeping? ....
4. What do you always do on vacation? ....



4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Granddad was a doctor. ( )
2. Granddad planted a fig tree in the garden of his house. ( )

B Complete the following.

1. Fares made a new .... called Walee
2. Waleed moved from Cairo because his .... had a new jo

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I enjoy .... time outsid
   a) spend b) to spend c) spending d) spent
2. We don't like .... chocolate on ice crean
   a) put b) putting c) to put d) to putting
3. Swimming is .... popular than paintin
   a) more b) most c) the most d) the least
4. Football is .... popular spor
   a) less b) least c) the most d) most

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. videos - I - taking - recording - and - love-pictures - .

....

2. anything - need - Do - the mall - from - you - ?

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite hobby

Guiding elements:

(camping - tent - summer - picnic - sing - fire)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

أسئلة من امتحانات المحافظات على الوحدتين (5 - 6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Basketball is the .... popular game in the USA.
   a) more b) most c) least d) the most
2. Egyptian food is the .... delicious food.
   a) more b) most c) less d) least
3. Talia hates .... arts and crafts.
   a) do b) did c) does d) doing
4. I think handball is .... popular than volleyball.
   a) the least b) the most c) less than d) more
5. Manal .... enjoy going outside.
   a) doesn't b) don't c) aren't d) isn't
6. Do you like .... hiking with your friends?
   a) go b) goes c) going d) went
7. A: What's wrong? B: ...., I'm fine.
   a) Everything b) Anything c) Something d) Nothing
8. .... in this shop is made of recycled plastic.
   a) Everything b) Anything c) Everybody d) Anybody
9. Is there .... to eat in the kitchen?
   a) something b) anything c) nothing d) somebody
10. Builders use steel and glass to .... the building look modern.
    a) make b) made c) makes d) making
11. I went to the cinema to .... a new film.
    a) see b) saw c) seen d) sees
12. Someone .... knocking on the door. I'll open it.
    a) were b) have c) is d) are

Non-fiction reader

THE BEDOUIN TRIBES OF THE DESERT



The Bedouin tribes are the oldest group of people in the deserts of North Africa and the Middle East. They have lived in the area for thousands of years. There are over 4 million Bedouin people in the world. About 1,200,000 are in Egypt, where they mostly live in South Sinai and the Sahara Desert.

قبائل البدوية هي أقدم مجموعة من الناس في صحاري شمال أفريقيا و الشرق الأوسط. لقد عاشوا في المنطقة من آلاف السنين.
يوجد أكثر من ٤ ملايين من البدو في العالم. حوالي ١,٢٠٠,٠٠٠ في مصر ، حيث أن معظمهم يعيش في جنوب سيناء والصحراء الكبرى.

The Bedouin way of life is changing in modern times,. but they have very old traditions. They are nomads, which means that they move to different places at different times of year because of the weather. They live in the desert in the winter months when it is cooler. In summer, it is too hot to be in the desert. They migrate to places where they can grow fruit and vegetables, such as an oasis.

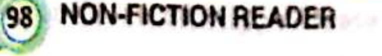
تتغير طريقة الحياة البدوية في العصر الحديث ، لكن لديهم تقاليد قديمة جدًا. إنهم بدو ، مما يعني أنهم ينتقلون إلى أماكن مختلفة في أوقات مختلفة من العام بسبب حالة الجو. إنهم يعيشون في الصحراء في أشهر الشتاء عندما يكون الجو أكثر برودة.
وفي الصيف ، يكون الجو حارًا جدًا في الصحراء. يهاجرون إلى أماكن يمكنهم فيها زراعة الفاكهة والخضروات ، مثل الواحة.

It is difficult to survive in the desert, but Bedouin people have learned how to live in a hot dry place and how to use everything in the natural world around them. Bedouin tents are made from wool, and they are easy to put up and take down. Bedouins understand almost everything about the natural world, and this helps them to find water in the desert.

من الصعب البقاء على قيد الحياة في الصحراء ، ولكن تعلم البدو كيف يعيشون في مكان جاف حار وكيفية استخدام كل شيء في العالم الطبيعي من حولهم. الخيام البدوية مصنوعة من الصوف ، ومن السهل نصبها وفكها. البدو يفهمون تقريبًا كل شيء عن العالم الطبيعي ، وهذا يساعدهم في العثور على المياه في الصحراء.

For example, if there are birds in one area, or some small plants, there might be water under the ground. They know how and where to dig wells. and they return to these wells every year to find water as they migrate through the desert.

على سبيل المثال ، إذا كانت هناك طيور في منطقة ما ، أو بعض النباتات الصغيرة ، فقد يكون هناك ماء تحت الأرض. إنهم يعرفون كيف وأين يحفرون الآبار ، ويعودون إلى هذه الآبار كل عام ليجدوا الماء بينما يهاجروا عبر الصحراء.



Help your child listen and read the text.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

Animals are important to the Bedouin way of life. They keep goats and travel across the desert to find food and water for them. Goat milk, and the cheese made from this, is an important part of their diet. Goat meat is used in lots of dishes. It is cooked for a long time in a pot with vegetables, herbs, and spices. But the most important animal is the camel. Camels have adapted well to desert life, and they are used for transportation, milk, and food. Camel skin can be used to make clothes and shelter, and camel hair is used to make rugs.

الحيوانات مهمة لطريقة الحياة البدوية. إنهم يربون الماعز ويسافرون عبر الصحراء للعثور على الطعام والماء لهم. حليب الماعز ، والجبن المصنوع منه ، هو جزء هام في نظامهم الغذائي. يستخدم لحم الماعز في الكثير من الأكلات. يتم طهيها لفترة طويلة في وعاء مع الخضار والأعشاب والتوابل. لكن الحيوان الأكثر أهمية هو الجمل. تكيفت الإبل بشكل جيد مع الحياة الصحراوية ، وتستخدم في النقل والحليب والطعام. يمكن استخدام جلد الإبل في صناعة الملابس والمأوى ، ويستخدم شعر الإبل في صناعة السجاد.

Bedouins are very hospitable people - they will always welcome guests to their homes and give them something to eat, such as dates or delicious baked bread. They drink hot tea and coffee, sometimes with lots of sugar, and this is given to visitors, too.

البدو أناس مضيافون للغاية-سيرحبون دائمًا بالضيوف في منازلهم ويعطونهم شيئا يأكلونه ، مثل التمر أو الخبز اللذيذ. يشربون الشاي الساخن والقهوة ، وأحيانًا مع الكثير من السكر ، وهذا يُقدم للزوار أيضًا.



Answer the following questions.

1. How do the Bedouins find water?

....

2. Show that the Bedouins are very hospitable people.

....

Bedouin traditions



As well as camels and goats, there is another animal which is important to Bedouins - the falcon. This amazing bird is a predator which can hunt for food in the desert. It can see very well, so it can find prey from a very long distance. Then it can fly quickly to catch it. Bedouin people keep falcons and teach the bird to catch food such as rabbits for them. There is a very stro relationship between the person and the falcon!

ضافة إلى الجمال والماعز ، هناك حيوان آخر مهم للبدو - الصقر. هذا الطائر المدهش هو حيوان مفترس يمكنه البحث عن عام في الصحراء. يمكن أن يرى جيدًا، لذلك يمكنه العثور على فريسة من مسافة طويلة جدًا. ثم يمكنه أن يطير بسرعة للإمساك يقوم البدو بتربية الصقور ويعلمون الطائر صيد الطعام لهم مثل الأرانب. هناك علاقة قوية جدًا بين الإنسان والصقر!

How do Bedouins know where to go?

It's easy to get lost in the desert, but Bedouins use the sun to find ea and west. They also know the position of stars in the sky at night, ar this shows which direction is north. They can look at the shape of san dunes, too. The direction which the wind comes from makes the san dunes develop in different ways. If the wind is coming from the east, th sand dunes will go from north to south. All of this helps Bedouins to kno where to go in the desert.

يف يعرف البدو إلى أين يذهبون؟ من السهل أن تتوه في الصحراء ، ولكن يستخدم البدو الشمس لمعرفة الشرق والغرب. وهم رفون أيضًا مكان النجوم في السماء ليلًا ، وهذا يُبين أي اتجاه يكون الشمال. يمكنهم النظر إلى شكل الكثبان الرملية أيضًا. لاتجاه الذي تأتي منه الرياح يجعل الكثبان الرملية تتشكل بطرق مختلفة. إذا كانت الرياح قادمة من الشرق ، فإن الكثبان رملية سوف تذهب من الشمال إلى الجنوب. كل هذا يساعد البدو في معرفة أين يذهبون في الصحراء.

What traditions do Bedouins have?

Poetry is an important Bedouin tradition. People remember and say lon poems at weddings, parties, and festivals. They also say shorter poem as they travel on camels or work. These poems can be fast or slow, to hel them as they work or move. The poems are often about family, the natur world, and their way of life.

ا هي عادات البدو؟ الشِّعر هو عادة بدوية مهمة. يتذكر الناس ويقولون قصائد طويلة في حفلات الزفاف والحفلات المهرجانات. كما يقولون قصائد أقصر أثناء سفرهم على الجمال أو العمل. يمكن أن تكون هذه القصائد سريعة أو بطيئة ، ساعدتهم أثناء عملهم أو تحركهم. غالبا ما تدور القصائد حول الأسرة والعالم الطبيعي وطريقة حياتهم.

Help your child listen and read the text.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.



Unit 7 Good advice

نصيحة جيدة



In this unit, the students will ...

- learn words for talking about sleep. يتعلم كلمات للحديث عن النوم.
- understand a story about the moon. يفهم قصة عن القمر.
- give advice about how to sleep well. يقدم النصيحة حول كيفية النوم بشكل جيد.
- learn about the best times to do things. يتعرف على أفضل الأوقات للقيام بالأشياء.
- do a healthy habits quiz. يحل اختبار عن العادات الصحية.
- use " if " to give advice. يستخدم "If" لإعطاء النصيحة.
- understand the tides and how they can affect us. يفهم المد والجزر وكيف يمكن أن يؤثر علينا.
- learn about how to be careful in hot weather. يتعرف على كيفية توخي الحذر في الطقس الحار.
- write an information leaflet about how to stay cool and safe. يكتب نشرة معلومات حول كيفية البقاء في طقس بارد وآمن.
- understand a story about King Canute and the tides. يفهم قصة عن الملك كانيوت والمد والجزر.

Lesson (1) SLEEP

Key vocabulary

moonlight	ضوء القمر	body clock	اعة البيولوجية للجسم
curtain	ستارة	bright	ع - ساطع
wide awake	يقظ / منتبه	darkness	لام
full moon	بدر كامل	half moon	ف القمر
sleepy	نعسان		

Extra vocabulary

problem	مشكلة	gravity	اذبية الأرضية
within	خلال - في غضون	tonight	يلة
dark	مظلم	midnight	تصف الليل
changes	تغييرات	until	اية / حتى
flashlight	وميض / مصباح يدوي / كشاف	day time	قت النهار

Definitions

wide awake	feel like you can't or don't want to sleep	قظ / منتبه
sleepy	feel like you need to go to bed and sleep	نعسان
a full moon	the time of the month when we can see all of one side of the moon	بدر كامل
moonlight	the light from the moon	ضوء القمر
body clock	something in your body that tells you when to sleep, wake up, and eat	الساعة البيولوجية للجسم
bright	with a lot of light	لامع - ساطع
darkness	when there is no light	ظلام

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Lesson (1)

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
affect	يؤثر على	affected	affected
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
explain	يشرح / يفسر	explained	explained

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
shine	تشرق	shone	shone
find	يجد	found	found
light	يضيء	lit	lit

Important expressions and prepositions

by the sea	بجوار البحر	as soon as	بمجرد أن
find ... difficult to	يجد من الصعب أن	at the usual time	في الوقت المعتاد
go past	يمر بـ (يتخطى)	wake up	يستيقظ
get out of	يخرج من	close the curtains	يغلق الستائر
go around	يدور حول	turn off	يطفئ / يغلق
affect sleep	يؤثر على النوم	on the sea	على البحر
at all	نهائيًا / على الإطلاق	get to sleep	يبدأ في النوم / ينام
look outside	ينظر بالخارج	all of one side of	جانب كامل من
takes about	يستغرق تقريبًا	get up	ينهض من الفراش (يستيقظ)
put....across....	يضع....عبر......	pull across	يسحب عبر

Did you know?

We spend around one-third of our lives sleeping.

نقضي حوالي ثلث حياتنا نائمين.

Read the story. What problem does Marwan have?

Marwan and the moon

Marwan lives by the sea. One evening, he went to bed at the usual time, but he could not sleep. He heard his mom go past his bedroom door and said," "Mom I can't sleep! I'm wide awake! I'm not sleepy at all!"

يعيش مروان بجانب البحر. ذات مساء ، ذهب إلى الفراش في الوقت المعتاد ، لكنه لم يستطع النوم. سمع والدته تتخطى باب غرفة نومه فقال: "أمي لا أستطيع النوم! أنا متيقظ جدًا! أنا لست نعسان على الإطلاق!"

Mom came in his room and looked outside the window."I know why you can't sleep," she said. "We have a full moon tonight. Look." Marwan got out of bed and looked at the moon. "It's very beautiful, isn't it?" he said. Mom said, "It is. Look how the moonlight shines on the sea."

دخلت الأم غرفته ونظرت خارج النافذة ثم قالت: "أعرف لماذا لا تستطيع النوم "انظر لدينا اكتمال القمر (البدر) الليلة. نهض مروان من الفراش ونظر إلى القمر وقال: "إنه جميل جدًا. أليس كذلك؟" قالت الأم: "إنه كذلك، انظر كيف يسطع ضوء القمر على البحر.

"But Mom," said Marwan, "why does the full moon stop me sleeping?"

"Well," said Mom, "it takes about 28 days for the moon to go around the Earth. When there is a full moon, we can see all of one side of the moon lit by the sun. Some people think that a full moon changes our body clocks. The moon's gravity could affect our sleep, too."

قال مروان: "لكن يا أمي، لماذا يمنعني البدر من النوم؟" قالت الأم: "حسنًا، يستغرق القمر حوالي ٢٨ يومًا لكي يدور حول الأرض. عندما يكون هناك قمر مكتمل (بدر) فإننا نرى جانب كامل من جوانب القمر مضاء بالشمس، يعتقد بعض الناس أن القمر الكامل يغير ساعات أجسامنا البيولوجية، وأنه يمكن أن تؤثر جاذبية القمر على نومنا أيضًا."

"So, the moon's gravity is stopping me sleeping,"said Marwan. "Yes, but it's mainly because the full moon is very bright, so our body clocks think it's still day time."

قال مروان: "إذًا ، فإن جاذبية القمر تمنعني من النوم".
قالت الأم: "نعم ، ولكن هذا يرجع أساسا إلى أن البدر ساطعا للغاية ، لذلك تعتقد ساعات أجسامنا البيولوجية أنه لا يزال وقت النهار."

"That's very interesting, Mom," said Marwan, "but I need to get up early to help Dad. We're going fishing. I'll be really tired if I can't get to sleep."

"No problem," said Mom, "I'm going to put this thick curtain across the window." As soon as Mom did this, the room was in darkness and Marwan started to feel sleepy. Within ten minutes, he fell asleep and slept very well until morning.

قال مروان:" هذا شيق للغاية يا أمي ، لكنني بحاجة إلى الاستيقاظ مبكرا لمساعدة أبي. سنذهب لصيد الأسماك. سأكون متعبًا حقًا إذا لم أتمكن من النوم." قالت أمي:" لا مشكلة ، سأضع هذه الستارة السميكة عبر النافذة."بمجرد أن فعلت الأم ذلك ، كانت الغرفة في ظلام وبدأ مروان يشعر بالنعاس. وفي غضون عشر دقائق ، غلبه النعاس ونام جيدًا حتى الصباح.

Help your child understand a story about the moon.
ساعد طفلك ان يفهم قصة عن القمر.

Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where does Marwan live? ....
2. Could Marwan sleep? ....
3. Who did Marwan hear? ....
4. What did Marwan say to his mom? ....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

sun - clocks - gravity - sky - moon

When there is a full moon, we can see all of one side of the 1) .... lit by the 2) .... Some people think that a full moon changes our body 3) .... The moon's 4) .... could affect our sleep, too.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I can't see well, the moon is in ....
   a) darkness b) bright c) flashlight d) light
2. He isn't wide awake. He is ....
   a) active b) lazy c) awake d) sleepy
3. .... is the light from the moon.
   a) Sunlight b) Flashlight c) Moonlight d) Darkness
4. It's something with a lot of light, it is ....
   a) dark b) bright c) blind d) darkness
5. The opposite of "sleepy" is ....
   a) relaxed b) dark c) wide awake d) bright
6. I don't like sports .... all.
   a) in b) by c) at d) for
7. When there's a lot of light, I close the ....
   a) certain b) curtains c) tables d) desks
8. The moon's .... could affect our sleep.
   a) gravity b) weight c) height d) light



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Connected with where the earth, moon and sun are in relation to on another as they rotate (يتعاقبوا). A full moon occurs every 28 days when th sunlight from the earth reflects off the side of the moon that we can se from earth. The opposite of a full moon is a half moon, it is not more brig than the full moon. We all like to look at the full moon.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about the ....
   a) moon b) sky c) space d) earth
2. The underlined word "occurs" means ....
   a) plays b) cooks c) eats d) happens

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How often does a full moon occur? ....
4. What is the opposite of a "full moon"? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. full moon - can - How - the - our - affect - sleep - ?

....

2. started - sleepy - Marwan - feel - to - .

....

3. learn - did - What - you - story - in the - ?

....

4. at - love - I - looking - full - the - moon - .

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Guiding elements: **Sleep and the moon**

(wide awake - sleepy - full moon - moonlight)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lesson (2) LANGUAGE

Vocabulary

bedtime	وقت النوم	muscles	عضلات
electronic devices	أجهزة إلكترونية	difference	اختلاف
great	عظيم / رائع	important	هام / مهم
problem	مشكلة	coach	مدرب
headache	صُداع		

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
relax	يستريح	relaxed	relaxed
change	يغير	changed	changed
digest	يهضم	digested	digested
kick	يركل	kicked	kicked
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept

Important expressions and prepositions

give advice	يقدم نصيحة	close to	قريب من
do your best	تبذلوا قصارى جهدكم	during the day	أثناء النهار
at bedtime	(عند / في) وقت النوم	scared of	خائف من

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Listen and read.



Coach : Hi! Great to see everybody! I want to talk to you about something very important this morning: sleep. Why do you think sleep is important?

مرحبا! إنه لشيء رائع أن أرى الجميع! أريد أن أتحدث إليكم عن شيء مهم جدًا هذا الصباح: النوم. لماذا تعتقدون أن النوم مهم؟

Younis : So we don't feel tired during the day. حتى لا نشعر بالتعب أثناء النهار.

Coach : Yes! When you don't sleep well, you feel bad during the day. You can't study or do your best at sports. So here are some tips for how to sleep well. First, if you don't feel sleepy at bedtime, have a shower or bath. This will help your body and muscles to relax. Does anybody do this?

حسنًا! عندما لا تنامون جيدًا ، تشعرون بالضيق أثناء النهار. لا يمكنكم الدراسة أو بذل قصارى جهدكم في الرياضة. لذلك إليكم بعض النصائح حول كيفية النوم جيدًا. أولًا ، إذا كنتم لا تشعرون بالنعاس في وقت النوم، فلتأخذا دشًا أو استحموا. وسيساعد ذلك أجسامكم وعضلاتكم على الاسترخاء. هل من أحد يفعل هذا؟

Fares : Not always, but I always have a shower in the morning.

ليس دائمًا ، ولكنى آخذ دشًا دائمًا في الصباح.

Coach : Try changing this and you should see a difference. Tip number two: If you need to go to sleep soon, don't use phones or tablets close to bedtime. When you go to bed, you shouldn't have your electronic devices with you.

حاول تغيير هذا وستلاحظ فرقًا. النصيحة الثانية: إذا كنتم بحاجة إلى النوم بسرعة ، فلا تستخدموا الهواتف أو الأجهزة اللوحية قبل النوم. عندما تذهبوا إلى الفراش ، لا ينبغى أن يكون معكم أجهزتكم الإلكترونية.

Help your child learn and give advice about how to sleep well. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم ويعطى نصيحة عن كيفية النوم جيدًا.

Younis	:	Why, Coach?	لماذا أيها المدرب؟
Coach	:	Because your brain keeps working hard, and it can't relax. Another tip: Don't eat a big meal close to bedtime. When you eat a big meal, your body has to work too hard to digest the food. Does anyone here read books at bedtime? لأن عقلكم يستمر في العمل بجد ، ولا يمكنه الاسترخاء. إليكم نصيحة أخرى: لا تأكلوا وجبة كبيرة قبل النوم. عندما تأكلون وجبة كبيرة ، يعمل جسمكم بجهدٍ كبيرٍ لهضم الطعام. هل من أحد هنا يقرأ الكتب عند النوم؟	
Fares	:	Yes, I do!	نعم ، أفعل ذلك!
Coach	:	Good. If you want to feel sleepy, read a good book at bedtime. Don't go to bed too late - around 10 pm is great. And finally, your bedroom should be dark when you sleep. If the street lights are bright outside your room, make sure you have good curtains. Also, don't listen to loud music in bed. حسنًا. إذا كنتم تريدون أن تشعروا بالنعاس ، اقرأوا كتابًا جيدًا قبل النوم. لا تذهبوا إلى الفراش في وقتٍ متأخرٍ جدًا - حوالي الساعة ١٠ مساءً شيءٌ رائع. وأخيرًا ، يجب أن تكون غرفة نومكم مظلمة عند النوم. إذا كانت أضواء الشوارع ساطعة خارج غرفتكم ، يجب أن يكون لديكم ستائر جيدة. أيضًا ، لا تستمعوا إلى الموسيقى الصاخبة في السرير.	
Younis	:	OK, thanks Coach!	حسنًا ، شكرًا مدربنا!

- Match to make sentences the coach says to give advice.

1. If you don't feel sleepy at bedtime,
2. If you need to go to sleep soon,
3. If you eat a big meal before bedtime,
4. If the street lights are bright outside your room,

a. make sure you have good curtains.
b. don't use phones or tablets close to bedtime.
c. have a shower or a bath.
d. your body has to work too hard to digest the food.

1- (   ) 2- (   ) 3- (   ) 4- (   )

Help your child learn and give advice about how to sleep well. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم ويعطي نصيحة عن كيفية النوم جيدًا.



(If) Zero Conditional "إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

Form التكوين

If / When + present simple , present simple

e.g. If you don't sleep well, you feel tired during the day.

When it's too hot, I get a headache.

(If) First Conditional "إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Form التكوين

If + present simple مضارع بسيط **, affirmative imperative** أمر مثبت

e.g. If you feel too hot in bed, open the window.

If + present simple مضارع بسيط **, negative imperative** أمر منفي

e.g. If you feel hungry at bedtime, don't eat chocolate.

Usage الاستخدام

We use "If":

1) To give advice about a problem. تستخدم لإعطاء النصيحة لحل مشكلة.

e.g. If you don't understand your homework, ask the teacher.

2) With the present simple to describe the problem.

تستخدم مع المضارع البسيط لوصف مشكلة.

e.g. If you want to fall asleep, read a book.

3) Use the infinitive without "to" to give the advice.

تستخدم المصدر بدون (to) لإعطاء النصيحة.

e.g. If you don't feel sleepy, have a shower.

Help your child use (if) to give advice.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم (if) لإعطاء النصيحة.





Practice

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If you are tired, ... to bed.
   a) goes b) go c) going d) went
2. If you are scared of the dark, ... your parents to leave the light on.
   a) asks b) ask c) asking d) asked
3. If you .... cold, don't open the window.
   a) feel b) feels c) will feel d) felt
4. If you need extra help with your homework, ... to the teacher.
   a) goes b) go c) going d) went
5. If you .... hungry, eat a sandwich.
   a) have b) are c) were d) aren't
6. If you .... a stomachache, don't eat a lot before sleeping.
   a) are b) had c) has d) have
7. If you feel hot, ... a shower.
   a) has b) have c) had d) having
8. If you are in a hurry, ... quickly.
   a) runs b) run c) ran d) running
9. If I don't .... enough water, I feel thirsty.
   a) drink b) drinks c) drunk d) drinking
10. I .... to sleep easily when I'm very tired.
   a) went b) go c) going d) goes



should / shouldn't ينبغي / لا ينبغي

Usage الاستخدام

We use "should / shouldn't" to give advice.

نستخدم "should / shouldn't" لإعطاء النصيحة.

e.g. You should have a shower close to bedtime.

e.g. You shouldn't use phones close to bedtime.

Form التكوين

Subject + should / shouldn't + inf.

e.g. I should help the poor.

e.g. You shouldn't waste your time.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You .... eat in class.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) can d) may
2. They .... help each other.
   a) shouldn't b) should c) mustn't d) aren't
3. You .... have a bath close to bedtime.
   a) should b) were c) shouldn't d) are
4. You .... use tablets close to bedtime.
   a) shouldn't b) shouldn't to c) should d) does
5. You shouldn't .... your homework close to bedtime.
   a) do b) did c) does d) done
6. You shouldn't .... a big meal close to bedtime.
   a) eats b) eaten c) eating d) eat
7. You .... find a book you like and read it at bedtime.
   a) should to b) should c) will not d) shouldn't

Help your child use (should / shouldn't) to give advice. ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم (shouldn't / should) لإعطاء النصيحة.



General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Is sleep important?

....

2. How does sleep help you?

....

3. What does sleep affect?

....

4. Does sleep make you work hard?

....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

hard - digest - brain - bedtime - fly

When you go to bed, you shouldn't have your electronic devices with you because your 1)............keeps working hard, and it can't relax. Don't eat a big meal close to 2)............... When you eat a big meal, your body has to work too 3)...............to 4)...............the food.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If you want to feel sleepy, read a good book at ....
   a) lunchtime b) bedtime c) dinner time d) work time
2. If you are thirsty, ... some water.
   a) drinking b) drinks c) drink d) drank
3. You should work hard and .... your best.
   a) make b) play c) do d) have
4. If you are hungry, ... a sandwich.
   a) eats b) eat c) eating d) ate
5. If you are sad, ... shout.
   a) doesn't b) don't c) isn't d) didn't



Read the following text and answer the questions.

When you don't sleep well, you feel bad during the day. You can't study or do your best at sports. So here are some tips for how to sleep well. First, if you don't feel sleepy at bedtime, have a shower or bath. This will help your body and muscles to relax. If you need to go to sleep soon, don't use phones or tablets close to bedtime. When you go to bed, you shouldn't have your electronic devices with you.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of "sleepy" is ....
   a) wide awake b) relaxed c) nervous d) tired
2. When you don't sleep well, you feel .... during the day
   a) good b) bad c) happy d) glad

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Find two tips for how to sleep well. ....
4. What shouldn't you do when you go to bed? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. bed - to - Don't - go - late - too - .

....

2. a shower - always - I - have - morning - the - in - .

....

3. football - is - What - coach - the - doing - ?

....



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

What you should and shouldn't do at bedtime

Guiding elements:

(get enough sleep - drink - read a book - unhealthy - get up late - chocolate)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lesson (3) WHEN TO DO THINGS

Key vocabulary

healthy habits	عادات صحية	balance	توازن
everything	كل شيء	relationships	علاقات
routine	روتين	social	اجتماعي

Extra vocabulary

surprising	مُدهش	heart	قلب
different	مختلف	together	سويًا
fresh air	هواء نقي	snack	وجبة خفيفة
the outside world	العالم الخارجي	useful	مفيد
everybody	كل شخص	candy	حلوى

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
achieve	يحقق - ينجز	achieved	achieved
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed	enjoyed
follow	يتبع	followed	followed



Important expressions and prepositions

interested in	مهتم بـ	instead of	بدلًا من
pieces of	قِطع من	in the day	في النهار
per day	في اليوم - لكل يوم	good for	جيد - مفيد لـ

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Listen and read.

Healthy habits

Find a healthy balance of play and exercise, healthy food, water, social time, and good sleep. When you put together all these things, you can be your best and achieve everything you want. Put your phone away when you can and enjoy the outside world with your family and friends. If you have healthy habits, you feel strong, happy, and have good relationships.

أوجد توازنًا صحيًا بين اللعب والتمارين ، الغذاء الصحي، الماء، وقت للاجتماعيات والنوم الجيد. عندما تجمع كل هذه الأشياء معًا، يمكنك أن تكون أفضل ما تكون وتحقق كل ما تريد. ضع هاتفك بعيدا عندما تستطيع واستمتع بالعالم الخارجي مع عائلتك وأصدقائك. إذا كانت لديك عادات صحية ، فستشعر بالقوة والسعادة وسيكون لديك علاقات جيدة.

Tips to be healthy نصائح لتكون بصحة جيدة

1) Everybody of your age should drink six to eight glasses of water a day.

كل شخص في عمرك ينبغي أن يشرب من ستة إلى ثمانية أكواب ماء في اليوم.

2) Try not to drink many sodas - they are not good for your heart or teeth.

حاول أن لا تشرب الكثير من المياه الغازية لأنها ليست جيدة لقلبك وأسنانك.

3) Everybody of your age should exercise for one hour per day - this can be playing with friends, going out on your bike, walking to school, or swimming.

كل شخص في عمرك ينبغي عليه أن يتدرب لمدة ساعة كل يوم، ويكون هذا باللعب مع الأصدقاء أو الخروج بالدراجة أو المشي إلى المدرسة أو السباحة.

4) Try not to spend more than two hours a day online.

حاول أن لا تقضي أكثر من ساعتين في اليوم على الإنترنت.

5) If you eat about five pieces of fruit per day, you feel better. Try to eat fruit instead of candy.

لو أكلت خمس قطع من الفاكهة في اليوم، تشعر أنك أفضل. جرب أن تأكل الفاكهة بدلًا من الحلوى.

6) Try to go to bed at 9 or 10 pm so you get enough sleep.

حاول أن تنام في تمام الساعة التاسعة أو العاشرة مساءً لكي تنال قسطًا كافيًا من النوم.

7) Everybody of your age should sleep for eight to ten hours a night.

كل شخص في عمرك ينبغي أن ينام من ثماني إلى عشر ساعات في الليلة.

Help your child learn healthy habits.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم العادات الصحية



General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How much water should you drink a day?

....

2. For what sodas are not good?

....

3. How long should everybody exercise per day?

....

4. What exercises can you do?

....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

day - fun - night - went - play

There are some tips to be healthy. Find time for sports and 1) .... Eat good food every 2) .... Sleep well all through the 3) .... And you will be all right! Spend time to have some 4) .... Fresh air is number one! Do somethings that you enjoy. Be a happy girl or boy!

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We shouldn't use electronic .... before bedtime.
   a) tools b) devices c) prizes d) verses
2. You should have a healthy .... of play and exercise.
   a) food b) balance c) recipe d) team
3. With healthy habits, you can be your best and ...... everything you want.
   a) achieve b) waste c) stop d) plant
4. If you have healthy habits, you feel strong, happy, and have good ......
   a) foods b) relationships c) relatives d) fruits
5. Drinking soda is not really good .... your heart or teeth.
   a) at b) by c) for d) in



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Healthy habits are very important to everyone. It's important to have balance of play and exercise, healthy food, water, and good sleep. Good healthy habits should include everything you do in your daily life. So we should have healthy habits and keep ourselves away from bad habits to become successful people easily without any difficulties.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the passage is about .... habits.
   a) healthy b) bad c) ugly d) sad
2. The meaning of the underlined word "successful" is ....
   a) effective b) ugly c) sad d) bored

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why are healthy habits important? ....
4. What do healthy habits include? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. kind - breakfast - What - of - eat - we - should - ?

....

2. of - balance - Find - exercise - play - and - a healthy - .

....

3. a night - many - How - hours - you - do - sleep - ?

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Healthy habits

Guiding elements:

(balance - exercise - play - social - achieve - friends - strong - relationships)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (4)

A PLAY

Vocabulary

deep	عميق	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
careful	حذر / حريص	interesting	شيق
rude	وقح (غير مهذب)	a play	مسرحية
encouragement	تشجيع	patient	صبور
accident	حادث	without	بدون
responsible	مسؤول	dangerous	خطير

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
present	يُقدّم	presented	presented
digest	يهضم	digested	digested
respect	يحترم	respected	respected
disagree	يرفض	disagreed	disagreed
hurt	يؤلم / يصيب	hurt	hurt
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken

Important expressions and prepositions

walk on	يمشي على	look after	يعتني بـ / يرعى
jump in	يقفز في	responsible for	مسؤول عن
wait for	ينتظر (شخص - شيء)	Are you OK?	هل أنت على ما يرام؟
it's dangerous to	من الخطر أن	give encouragement	يشجع
at the side of	في جانب	follow advice	يتبع النصيحة

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Listen and read.

Ibrahim, Shady, and Seif arrive at the swimming pool. It's a beautiful day.

يصل إبراهيم، و شادي وسيف إلى حمام السباحة. إنه يوم جميل.

Ibrahim : Let's jump in the water now. لنقفز في الماء الآن.

Shady : We shouldn't go swimming yet, we've just had our lunch!

ينبغي ألا نسبح الآن، لقد تناولنا الغداء للتوا

Seif : Shady's right. It's too early to go in the water. Let's wait for our food to digest. (شادي) على حق. من السابق لأوانه الذهاب إلى الماء. دعنا ننتظر لنهضم طعامنا.

Ibrahim : Seif, you can't tell me what to do, you're not old enough. You're only seven! I'm going to jump in the water.

سيف ، لا تملي عليّ ما أفعله ، أنت لست كبيرًا بما يكفي. أنت فقط عمرك سبع سنوات! سأقفز في الماء.

Shady : Ibrahim, the water isn't deep enough here. It's dangerous to jump in water that isn't very deep. You will hit the bottom of the pool.

إبراهيم ، المياه ليست عميقة بالقدر الكافي هنا. من الخطر أن تقفز في المياه التي ليست عميقة جدًا.

سوف تصطدم بقاع الحمام.

Ibrahim : Here I go! ها أنا ذا!

Ibrahim jumps in the water. He hurts his foot. إبراهيم يقفز في الماء. ويصيب قدمه.

Ibrahim : Ow! آوا

Seif : Are you OK? Sit at the side of the pool.

هل أنت بخير؟ اجلس بجانب حمام السباحة.

Ibrahim : Thank you, Seif! I'm very sorry. I wasn't patient enough to listen to your and Shady's advice.

شكرا سيف! أنا آسف جدًا. لم أكن صبورا بما يكفي للاستماع إلى نصائحك أنت و شادي.

Shady : Does your foot hurt too much to walk on it?

هل قدمك تؤلمك كثيرًا جدًا لدرجة أنك لا يمكنك أن تمشي عليها؟

Ibrahim : No, it's OK. I'm just happy you and Seif were here. What would I do without my friends?

لا ، لا بأس. أنا فقط سعيد لأنك كنت هنا أنت وسيف. ماذا كنت سأفعل بدون أصدقائي؟

Help your child listen and read the play.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ المسرحية.



too - enough

1) too

too + adj + to + inf جدًا جدًا لدرجة أن لا

e.g. He is too young to go on his own.

e.g. It's too early to go in the water.

e.g. He is too weak to carry the heavy box.

2) enough

adj + enough to + inf

e.g. I wasn't patient enough to listen to your advice.

e.g. He was rich enough to buy this expensive watch.

enough + (اسم لا يعد - اسم يعد)

e.g. We have enough desks.

e.g. She has enough milk.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. He is .... old to work.
   a) to b) two c) too d) enough
2. She is too young .... cook food.
   a) too b) to c) two d) enough
3. I'm not strong .... to carry that heavy box.
   a) that b) enough c) too d) to
4. He wasn't rich .... to buy that car.
   a) enough b) that c) too d) to

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How often should you practise swimming?

____

2. What does swimming build?

____

3. What can swimming improve?

____

4. Why is it dangerous to jump into deep water?

____

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

fine - hurt - dangerous - early - deep

Ali went swimming one day. It was too 1) .... to go in the water. It's 2) .... to jump in water that is not 3) .... so that you won't 4) .... your feet.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It is not ______________________ to jump in water that is not deep.
   a) dangerous b) safe c) calm d) serious
2. Let's wait ______________________ our food to digest.
   a) at b) by c) for d) with
3. Teachers should ___ encouragement to their classes to practise sports.
   a) play b) make c) give d) take
4. The teacher should be __________ and listen to his children carefully.
   a) rude b) scared c) patient d) impatient
5. Mothers always look ______________________ their children.
   a) for b) at c) by d) after
6. If you jump in the water, you will ______________________ your foot.
   a) hate b) kick c) hurt d) burn

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

One day, three friends decided to go to the swimming pool. It was a beautiful day. When they arrived, Ibrahim suggested jumping in the water. His friend Shady advised **him** not to go swimming because they had their lunch a short time ago. Seif agreed to Shady's suggestion and wanted him to wait for the food to be digested. Ibrahim refused to wait and jumped in the water and hurt his foot. Finally he thanked his friends because they took care of him.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ibrahim jumped in the water and hurt his ....
   a) arm   b) nose   c) foot   d) ear
2. The underlined pronoun "him" refers to ....
   a) Ibrahim   b) Seif   c) Shady   d) Ali

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did Ibrahim suggest? ....
4. Why did Shady advise Ibrahim not to go swimming? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. go - you - Would - like - to - swimming - ?

   ....

2. water - jump - Don't - in - deep - not - that is - .

   ....

3. too - early - It's - go - to - water - in - the - .

   ....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

The dangers of swimming

Guiding elements:

(dangerous - pool - deep - hurt - foot - eat - before)

....

....

Lesson (5) THE TIDES

Key vocabulary

high tide	المد العالي	main effect	التأثير الأساسي	rocks	صخور
low tide	الجزر المنخفض	gravity	جاذبية	shallow	ضحل / سطحي

Extra vocabulary

fisherman	صيّاد سمك	sunscreen	كريم واقي من الشمس	the coast	الساحل
dangerous	خطير	everyone	كل شخص (الجميع)	danger	خطر
different	مختلف	frightened	خائف	parents	الوالدين
towards	باتجاه / ناحية	harbor	ميناء	side	جانب

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
cover	يغطي	covered	covered
affect	يؤثر على	affected	affected
push	يدفع	pushed	pushed
explain	يشرح / يفسر	explained	explained
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Important expressions and prepositions

walk along the coast	يمشي على طول الساحل	move around	يدور حول
last time	آخر مرة	away from	بعيدًا عن
go for a walk	يتمشى	point to	يشير إلى
get into danger	يقع في خطر	push away	يدفع بعيدًا

Did you know?

The Bay of Fundy in Canada has the highest tides in the world. The difference between high and low tides is more than 12 meters. In the Mediterranean, it is a few centimeters

يمتلك خليج فندي في كندا أعلى مد وجزر في العالم. الفرق بين المد والجزر العالي والمنخفض هو أكثر من 12 متر. في البحر الأبيض المتوسط هو بضعة سنتيمترات.

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Read the story. Why was the family on the rocks frightened?

Saved from the sea



My uncle is a fisherman and he lives near the sea. When we visit him, we like to go walking along the coast because it's beautiful. Last time we went to see him, we went for a walk late in the afternoon. Then I heard someone shouting from the beach below us.

عمي صياد سمك ويعيش بالقرب من البحر. عندما نزوره ، نحب أن نسير على طول الساحل لأنه جميل. آخر مرة ذهبنا لرؤيته، تمشينا في وقتٍ متأخرٍ من الظهيرة. ثم سمعت شخصًا ما يصرخ من الشاطئ أسفلنا.

"Uncle," I said, "I think there's someone down there!" and I pointed to the people on the beach. "Oh, dear! Not again!" said Uncle. We ran down to the beach.

قلت: "عمي ، أعتقد أن هناك شخصًا ما بالأسفل هناك!" وأشرت إلى الناس الذين هم على الشاطئ. قال العم: "يا إلهي! ليس مرة أخرى!" وجرينا باتجاه الشاطئ.

There were two parents and a child on some rocks in the sea. The tide was coming in, and there was water all around them. They were very frightened and the child was crying.

كان هناك والدان وطفل على بعض الصخور في البحر. كان المد قادمًا تجاهنا، وكان هناك ماء في كل مكان. كانوا خائفين جدًا والطفل كان يصرخ.

Help me with the boat!" shouted Uncle. He had a small boat on the beach, so we got in it and went quickly to the family. They were very happy when we took them back to the beach. They thanked us very much, then they went home.

صرخ العم قائلًا: "ساعدني في جلب القارب!" كان لديه قارب صغير على الشاطئ ، لذلك ركبنا فيه وتوجهنا بسرعة إلى العائلة. كانوا سعداء للغاية عندما أخذناهم إلى الشاطئ. لقد شكرونا جدًا ، ثم ذهبوا إلى المنزل.

Help your child understand the tides and how they can affect us. ساعد طفلك أن يفهم المد والجزر وكيف يؤثر علينا.



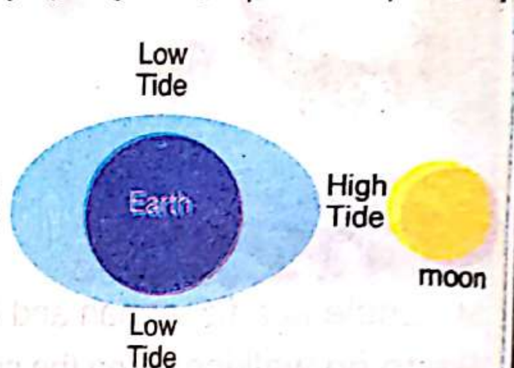
After this, we went back to Uncle's house to have dinner with the family. We told everyone about what happened.

"Why did this happen?" asked my little sister.

بعد ذلك ، عدنا إلى منزل العم لتناول العشاء مع العائلة. أخبرنا الجميع بما حدث. وسألتني أختي الصغيرة: "لماذا حدث ذلك؟"

When the family walked to the rocks, the tide was low" said Uncle. "But then the tide came in and the water was too deep for them to walk to the beach."

قال العم: "عندما كانت العائلة تسير تجاه الصخور ، كان الجزر منخفضًا ولكن بعد ذلك جاء المد وكان الماء عميقا جدًا بالنسبة لهم لدرجة أنهم لا يستطيعون أن يمشوا عائدين إلى الشاطئ."



"But what causes the tides?" I asked him. "There are two things that cause the tides: the moon and the sun," he said. "But the main effect is from the moon. When it moves around the Earth, its gravity pulls the water on Earth towards it. This causes a high tide in the water nearest the moon. On the opposite side of Earth, the moon's gravity pulls the Earth away from the water, so you get another high tide. So on two sides of the Earth we have the high tides and at the other two sides of the Earth we have the low tides. Look, I'm going to do a drawing for you, here it is.

سألته: " لكن ما الذي يسبب المد والجزر؟".

قال:" هناك شيئان يسببان المد والجزر: القمر والشمس لكن التأثير الرئيسي يأتي من القمر. عندما يتحرك حول الأرض ، تسحب جاذبيته الماء على الأرض نحوه. هذا يسبب ارتفاع المد في الماء الأقرب للقمر. على الجانب الآخر من الأرض ، تسحب جاذبية القمر الأرض بعيدًا عن الماء ، حتى تحصل على مد عالٍ آخر. لذلك على جانبين من الأرض لدينا المد العالي وعلى الجانبين الآخرين من الأرض لدينا الجزر المنخفض. انظري ، سأقوم بعمل رسم لكي يوضح ذلك ، ها هو.

"That's fantastic!" I said. "So the moon is strong enough to pull all that water! How often do we get high tides?"

"Twice every day" said Uncle. "That's why people should be careful and understand tides before they go to the beach. If they don't understand the tides, they can get into danger, like we saw today."

قلت: "هذا رائع!" لذا فإن القمر قوي بما يكفي لسحب كل هذا الماء! كم مرة نحصل على المد العالي؟" "مرتين كل يوم" قال العم. "لهذا السبب يجب على الناس توخي الحذر وفهم المد والجزر قبل أن يذهبوا إلى الشاطئ. إذا لم يفهموا المد والجزر ، يمكن أن يتعرضوا للخطر ، كما رأينا اليوم."

Help your child understand the tides and how they can affect us. ساعد طفلك أن يفهم المدّ والجزر وكيف يؤثر علينا.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What's your uncle's job?

....

2. Where does he live?

....

3. What do you like doing when you visit your uncle?

....

4. What did you hear?

....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

gravity - high - water - happen - tides

The moon goes around the Earth. Its 1)..................... pulls the water on Earth towards it. We then have 2)................ tides at two sides of the Earth and low 3)........ at the other sides of the Earth. High tides 4)......... about every 12 hours.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The .... controls the tides.
   a) moon   b) wind   c) sky   d) land
2. A high tide is when the sea covers .... of the beach.
   a) most   b) less   c) little   d) small
3. There is a high tide and a low tide .... a day.
   a) once   b) four times   c) three times   d) twice
4. A low tide is when the sea covers .... of the beach.
   a) most   b) less   c) more   d) a lot
5. When there is a high tide in a harbor, the water is ....
   a) shallow   b) flat   c) deep   d) broad
6. The sea was deep, but luckily someone .... him.
   a) gave   b) spoiled   c) saved   d) drowned

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

"There are two things that cause the tides: the moon and the sun." "But the main effect is from the moon. When it moves around the Earth, its gravity **pulls** the water on Earth towards it. This causes a high tide in the water nearest the moon. On the opposite side of Earth, the moon's gravity pulls the Earth away from the water, so you get another high tide. So on two sides of the Earth we have the high tides and at the other two sides of the Earth we have the low tides.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about the ....

   a) rides b) sides c) tides d) sizes

2. The opposite of the underlined word "pulls" is ....

   a) follows b) washes c) pushes d) explains

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What are the two things that cause the tides? ....
4. What happens when the moon moves around the Earth? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. around - moon - The - goes - Earth - the - .

   ....

2. be - tide - Which - can - dangerous - more - ?

   ....

3. Hana - was - Why - beach - the - at - ?

   ....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

The tides

Guiding elements:

(Earth - gravity - high - moon - tides - dangerous)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Lesson (6) WRITING A LEAFLET

Key vocabulary

dangerous	خطير	information	معلومات
headache	صُداع	explanation	تفسير - شرح

Extra vocabulary

comfortable	مُريح	dust storm	عاصفة ترابية
thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية	loose clothes	ملابس واسعة (فضفاضة)
main heading	عنوان رئيسي	sub-heading	عنوان ثانوي (فرعي)
compass	بوصلة	curtains	ستائر
hiking	التنزه سيرًا على الأقدام	skin	جلد / بشرة
accident	حادث	environment	البيئة
advice	نصيحة	useful	مفيد
photo	صورة	tips	نصائح
sick	مريض	heat	حرارة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
stay	يمكث / يبقى	stayed	stayed
respect	يحترم	respected	respected
include	يشتمل على	included	included

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
leave	يغادر / يترك	left	left
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten

Important expressions and prepositions

lose water	يفقد الماء	get dark	يُظلم
during the day	أثناء النهار	lots of	كثيرًا من
get a headache	يُصاب بالصُداع	come in	يدخل
get burned	يحترق	at risk	في خطر
get lost	يفقد اتجاهه / يتوه	tips for	نصائح لـ





How to keep cool at home

Main heading

Why is heat dangerous?

- Your body may lose water and salt quickly.
- You may get headaches.



Who is at risk?

Sub-heading

- Older people
- Young children
- People who are sick





Photo

Tips for keeping cool:

Advice

- Close your curtains during the day so that the sun will not make the rooms hot.
- Wear light-colored, loose clothes so that you will feel more comfortable.
- Drink lots of water so that you can stay well.
- Open your windows at night so that cooler air can come in.

Tip!

- When writing a leaflet, choose an interesting main heading and add subheadings.

عند كتابة نشرة ، اختر عنوانًا رئيسيًا مثيرا للاهتمام وأضف عناوين فرعية.

- Use different expressions to give advice.

استخدم تعبيرات مختلفة لتقديم النصيحة.

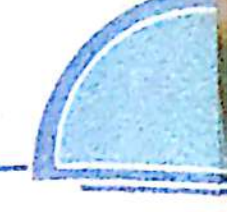
- Do your research so that you have interesting things to say.

قم ببحثك حتى يكون لديك أشياء مثيرة للاهتمام لتقولها.

- Use attractive photos and pictures.

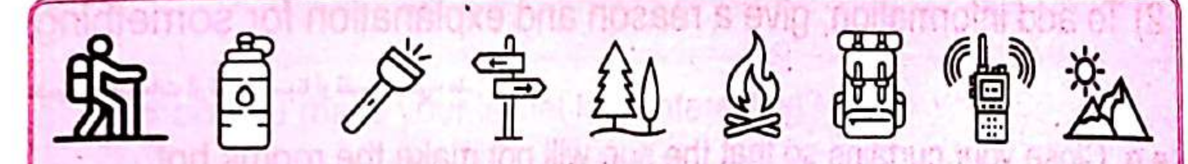
استخدم صورًا فوتوغرافية وصورًا جذابة.

Help your child learn about how to be careful in hot weather. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يكون حريصًا في الطقس الحار.



Read the leaflet quickly. What is it about?

STAYING SAFE WHEN YOU GO HIKING



Why can hiking sometimes be dangerous?

- You might fall or have an accident.
- There might be a big thunderstorm or a dust storm.
- You might get lost.
- It might get dark quickly.

Who is in danger?

- People who walk alone.
- Older people.

Top tips for staying safe!

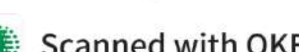
1. Walk with a group of friends or family
2. Take a map and a compass
3. Take a phone
4. Wear good hiking boots
5. Take lots of water and snacks
6. Wear a hat and put on some sunscreen.

Don't forget

- You should plan your trip. How much time do you need?
- You should respect the environment. Don't leave any trash.

Help your child write an information leaflet about how to stay cool and safe.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب منشورا عن كيفية البقاء باردًا وآمنًا.



so that

حتى - لكي

We use "so that":

تستخدم (حتى - لكي)

1) To show the purpose of something.

تبين الغرض من شئ ما.

2) To add information, give a reason and explanation for something.

تضيف معلومات أو تعطي سببًا أو تفسيرًا لشيء ما.

e.g. Close your curtains so that the sun will not make the rooms hot.

Study the following:

1) Eat healthy food so that you can stay healthy.
2) Don't eat sweets so that you will have good teeth.
3) Wear sunscreen so that your skin will not burn.
4) Wear sunglasses so that your eyes can be protected.

لاحظ:

يأتي بعد (so that) جملة كاملة بها (can / will) للمضارع و (could) للماضي.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I study hard so .... I can succeed.
   a) the   b) that   c) these   d) then
2. He gets up early .... he can catch the bus.
   a) so that   b) that so   c) and that   d) so than
3. I read carefully .... that I can understand easily.
   a) so   b) this   c) or   d) that
4. Take a map or a compass .... you won't get lost.
   a) that so   b) so then   c) so that   d) then what
5. Wear a hat and put on sunscreen .... you won't get burned.
   a) that when   b) so then   c) for that   d) so that

Help your child learn and use "so that".

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم ويستخدم "so that".



General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What is a leaflet?

....

2. How do you make a good leaflet?

....

3. How do you make your leaflet look interesting?

....

4. Where can you find leaflets?

....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

protected - healthy - teeth - sunscreen - unhealthy

There are many tips to be cool and stay healthy. Firstly eat 1)............ food so that you can stay healthy. Secondly don't eat sweets so that you'll have good 2)............. . Thirdly wear 3)............ so that your skin will not burn. Finally wear sunglasses so that your eyes can be 4)............ .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Close the .... so that the sun will not make the rooms hot.
   a) curtains b) books c) cars d) tables
2. Wear sunscreen so that your .... will not burn.
   a) pen b) skin c) pin d) leather
3. Wear sunglasses so that your eyes can be ....
   a) visited b) played c) protected d) cooked
4. Study hard .... you can pass the exam.
   a) so that b) can that c) and that d) by that
5. Take a map and a .... so that you won't get lost.
   a) tent b) compass c) pin d) pen
6. You should .... the environment. Don't leave any trash.
   a) hate b) break c) respect d) cook



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

It was a sunny day last Sunday. Mona went to the pyramids with her friends Ola, Noha and Heba. First, they had breakfast. They had eggs, beans and cheese, then they rode on camels and horses. They met a lot of tourists. They enjoyed their time there and came back home at 7 o'clock.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mona and her friends went to the ....
   a) pyramids b) zoo c) park d) museum
2. Mona and her friends went to the pyramids on ....
   a) Saturday b) Monday c) Sunday d) Friday

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did they have for breakfast? ....
4. When did they come back home? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the best - are - What - tips - staying - cool - for - ?
   ....
2. you - do - Where - leaflets - find - ?
   ....
3. plan - should - You - trip - your - .
   ....
4. the - should - You - respect - environment - .
   ....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Tips for staying safe when you go hiking.

Guiding elements:

(group - family - map - compass - phone - hiking boots - water - snacks)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lesson (7) STORY

Key vocabulary

officers	ضباط	king	ملك
servants	خدم	intelligent	ذكى
nature	طبيعة	England	انجلترا

Extra vocabulary

fair	عادل	special	خاص / مميز
bored	شاعر بالملل	queen	ملكة
great man	رجل عظيم	castle	قلعة
surprised	مندهش	important	هام / مهم
powerful	قوى / جبار		

Definitions

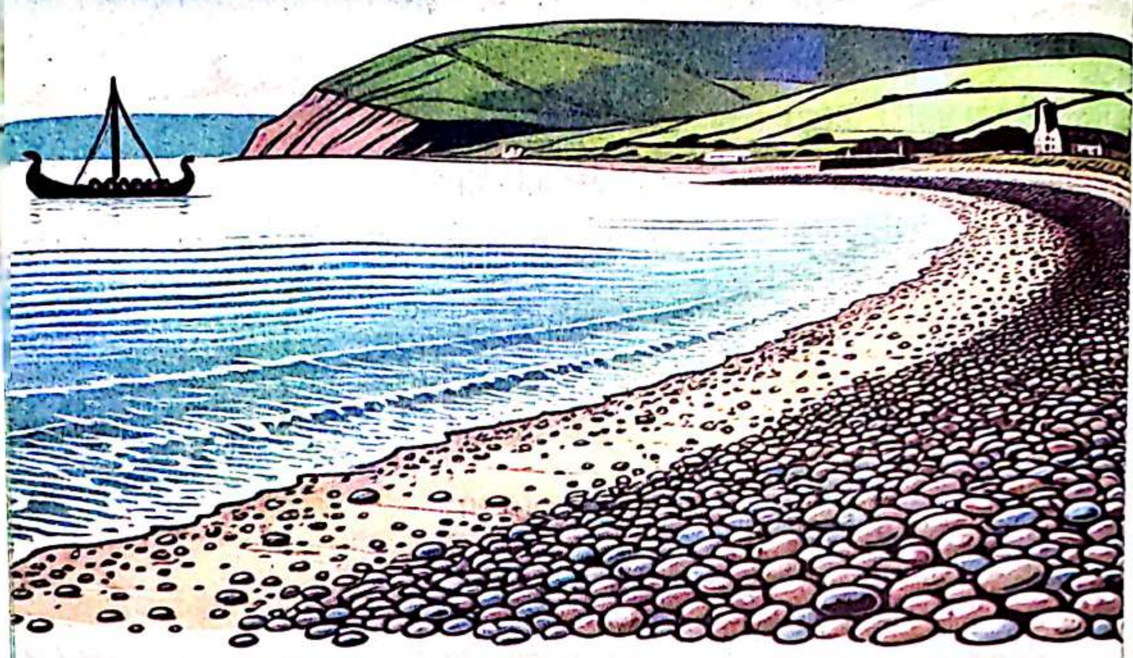
normal	usual and not special	عادى
edge	the part of something that is farthest from the center	حافة
intelligent	clever and good at learning things	ذكى
obey	do what a person or rule asks you to do	يطيع
throne	a special chair a king or queen sits on	عرش

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
obey	يطيع	obeyed	obeyed
respect	يحترم	respected	respected
show	يبين	showed	shown
become	يصبح	became	become

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

King Canute's beach in England



King Canute was the King of England around1,000 years ago. He was a very fair king and looked after his people well. His officers always told him that he was a great man who was very strong and intelligent. Some said, "King Canute, you are the most powerful man on Earth!" But King Canute became bored of what his officers said. He wanted to show them that he was a normal person.

One day, he was with his officers on the beach in Southampton, a city in the south of England. His officers said to him, "There isn't anything in this world that would disobey you because you are so great."

"But what about the sea?" asked King Canute. "Do you think it will obey me?"

"Of course!" said the officers. "Everything in this world obeys you, great king!"

King Canute asked his servants to put his throne near the edge of the sea and he sat down. "Don't move, sea!" he shouted. He wanted to teach his officers a lesson.

He waited until the tide came in. First, it wet his feet and then his clothes. His officers were very surprised, but they said nothing. Finally, King Canute stood up. "You see," he said. "There is no man who can stop the tides. Nothing is more powerful than nature!"

Help your child understand a story about King Canute. ساعد طفلك ان يفهم قصة عن الملك كانوت.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who was Canute?

....

2. What was Canute called?

....

3. When does Canute a power in the politics of Europe?

....

4. What kingdoms did Canute bring together?

....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

servants - edge - kings - officers - throne

King Canute was the king of England. He asked his 1)........................ to put his 2)........................ near the 3)........................ of the sea and he sat down. He wanted to teach his 4)........................ a lesson.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

King Canute was the King of England around 1,000 years ago. He was a very fair king and looked after his people well. His officers always told him that he was a great man who was very strong and **intelligent**. Some said, "King Canute, you are the most powerful man on Earth!" But King Canute became bored of what his officers said. He wanted to show them that he was a normal person. One day, he was with his officers on the beach in Southampton, a city in the south of England. His officers said to him, "There isn't anything in this world that would disobey you because you are so great."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about King ....
   a) Ramses b) Tut c) Canute d) Khufu
2. The underlined word "intelligent" means ....
   a) fool b) stupid c) clever d) ugly

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How was King Canute? ....

4. What did his officers always tell him? ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Canute was a famous king of ______________ around 1,000 years ago.
   a) Italy b) Egypt c) England d) Syria
2. King Canute looked ______________ his people well.
   a) at b) by c) for d) after
3. King Canute became ______________ of what his officers said.
   a) bored b) exciting c) interesting d) amazing
4. The officers always ______________ King Canute.
   a) played b) obeyed c) looked d) listen
5. " ______________ " means usual and not special.
   a) Normal b) Edge c) Throne d) Obey
6. " ______________ " is a special chair for a king or queen.
   a) Edge b) Normal c) Obey d) Throne
7. To ______________ is to do what a person or a rule asks you to do.
   a) play b) pray c) obey d) disobey

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. king - was - Canute - the - England - of - .

....

2. fair - King - Was - Canute - intelligent - and - ?

....

3. his - officers - Did - him - obey - ?

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

King Canute

Guiding elements:

(England - officers - fair - intelligent - obey - throne - edge - lesson)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Writing Corner

Healthy habits

Healthy habits are very important to be successful in life. Eat healthy food, fresh vegetables and fruit. Find time to play sports. Sleep well all through the night. You should do a lot of exercises to be fit. Breathe fresh air. If you have healthy habits, you can feel strong, happy and have good relationships. Also you can achieve everything you want.

Staying safe when you go hiking

It's important to be safe. To be safe you must do a lot of things. Firstly walk with a group of friends or family so that you won't be alone. Take a map and a compass so that you won't get lost. Wear a hat and put on sunscreen so that you won't get burned.

King Canute

King Canute was the king of England around 1,000 years ago. He was a very fair king and looked after his people well. His officers always told him that he was a great man who was very strong and intelligent, but he became bored of what they said. He wanted to be treated like a normal person. He asked them to put his throne near the edge of the sea to teach them a lesson.

How to sleep well

When you don't sleep well, you feel bad during the day. You can't study or do your best at sports. So here are some tips for how to sleep well. First if you don't feel sleepy at bedtime, take a shower or bath. This will help your body and muscles to relax. If you need to go to sleep soon, don't use phones or tablets close to bedtime.



Dictation on Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

نعسان .... ضوء القمر

لامع .... ستارة

حالم .... يقظ - منتبه

الجاذبية الأرضية .... يتحرك

كشاف .... نصف القمر

Lesson (2)

متأخر .... وقت النوم

نائم .... أجهزة إلكترونية

مضطرب .... مشكلة

نصيحة .... صداع

خائف من .... عضلات

Lesson (3)

اجتماعي .... ذكريات عزيزة

قلب .... كل شيء

وجبة خفيفة .... روتين

هواء نقي .... توازن

منعش .... علاقات

Lesson (4)

حذاء رياضي .... طريق

شيق .... عريض

مسرحية .... وقح

صبور .... حلوة

التشجيع .... مسؤول

Lessons (5 & 6)

خطير .... المد العالي

صياح .... المد المنخفض

عاصفة رعدية .... ممطر

عاصفة ترابية .... بارد - مشمس

كريم واقي من الشمس .... موجة صغيرة

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات



Review on Unit (7)

Sleep

body clock	الساعة البيولوجية للجسم	bright	لامع / ساطع	sleepy	نعسان
wide awake	منتبه / يقظ	darkness	ظلام	bedtime	وقت النوم
full moon	بدر (قمر مكتمل)	moonlight	ضوء القمر		

Tides

Earth	الأرض	high	عالي	tides	المد والجزر
gravity	الجاذبية	low	منخفض	moon	القمر

Story

bottom	قاع	shout	يصرخ / يصيح	obey	يطيع
disobey	يعصى	normal	عادى	officer	ضابط
edge	حافة	intelligent	ذكى	throne	عرش
fair	عادل	main effect	تأثير أساسي	nature	الطبيعة

(If) Zero Conditional

"إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

Form التكوين

If / When + present simple , present simple

e.g. If you don't sleep well, you feel tired during the day.

When it's too hot, I get a headache.

(If) First Conditional

"إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Form التكوين

If + present simple , affirmative imperative

e.g. If you feel too hot in bed, open the window.

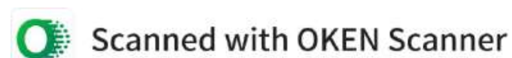
If + present simple , negative imperative

e.g. If you feel hungry at bedtime, don't eat chocolate.

Help your child revise unit (7).

ساعد طفلك على مراجعة الوحدة السابعة .





should / shouldn't ينبغي / لا ينبغي

Usage الاستخدام

We use "**should / shouldn't**" to give advice.

نستخدم "should / shouldn't" لإعطاء النصيحة.

e.g. You should have a shower close to bedtime.

e.g. You shouldn't use phones close to bedtime.

Form التكوين

Subject + should / shouldn't + inf.

e.g. I should help the poor.

e.g. You shouldn't waste your time.

too - enough

1) too

too + adj + to + inf جدًا جدًا لدرجة أن لا

e.g. He is too young to go on his own.

e.g. It's too early to go in the water.

e.g. He is too weak to carry the heavy box.

2) enough

adj + enough to + inf

e.g. I wasn't patient enough to listen to your advice.

e.g. He was rich enough to buy this expensive watch.

so that حتى - لكي

We use "so that": **نستخدم (حتى - لكي)**

1) To show the purpose of something. لتبين الغرض من شيء ما.

2) To add information, give a reason and explanation for something.

لتضيف معلومات أو تعطي سببًا أو تفسيرًا لشيء ما.

e.g. Close your curtains so that the sun will not make the rooms hot.

Help your child revise unit (7).

ساعد طفلك على مراجعة الوحدة السابعة .



Exam On Unit (7)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who is a fisherman? ....
2. Why do you like to go walking along the coast? ....
3. Why was the man in danger? ....
4. What did your uncle do to the man? ....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

enough - Breathe - habits - successful - success

Do you have healthy habits? Healthy 1).............. are very important to be 2).............. in life. Eat healthy food, fresh vegetables and fruit. You should get 3).................... sleep. 4).................. fresh air to relax and have fun.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Water is very important in our life. We need <u>it</u> for drinking, washing, cooking, watering the fields and getting electricity. Everyone should feel sorry for every drop that falls. Some people use too much water to wash their cars. Others leave their taps open. Children should be taught how to use water carefully. Parents and teachers should teach children that water can help to turn the desert into green land to grow more crops.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We should use water..............................
   a) carefully b) careful c) carelessly d) careless
2. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a) water b) food c) clothes d) plants

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What should teachers and parents teach their children?

....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

....



The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Fares went on a trip to see Granddad's village. ( )
2. Fares met some people who knew Granddad when he was a boy. ( )

B Complete the following.

1. Fares traveled to Granddad's .... with Waleed and his family.
2. They visited the house where .... used to live.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If you know the answer, ______________ your hand.
   a) raised b) raise c) raising d) raises
2. He is ______________ weak to carry the heavy box.
   a) two b) to c) toe d) too
3. I wasn't patient______________ to listen to your advice.
   a) too b) so c) so hat d) enough
4. Take a map and a compass ______________ you won't get lost.
   a) that b) so that c) to d) so as

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. usually - do - Where - you - leaflets - find - ?

....

2. lives - by - Marwan - sea - the - .

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Healthy habits

Guiding elements:

(balance - play - healthy - social - achieve - enjoy - family)

Unit 8 People who help us

الناس الذين يساعدوننا



In this unit, the students will ...

- find out about people who help in our community. يتعرف على الأشخاص الذين يساعدوننا في مجتمعنا.
- use adjectives ending -ed or -ing. يستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ-ed- أو بـ-ing.
- use will, won't, and can for offers, promises, and requests. يستخدم will, won't, can للعروض والوعود والطلبات.
- understand a conversation and poster about a community event. يفهم محادثة وملصق حول حدث مجتمعي.
- understand a story about an animal rescue. يفهم قصة عن إنقاذ حيوان.
- understand a school project about nocturnal animals. يفهم مشروعًا مدرسيًا عن الحيوانات الليلية.
- write an introduction to a school project. يكتب مقدمة لمشروع مدرسي.
- understand a story about animals in the city at night. يفهم قصة عن الحيوانات في المدينة ليلًا.

Lesson (1) HELPING THE COMMUNITY

Key vocabulary

neighborhood	حي / مجاورة	a special stick	عصا خاصة	tiring	مُتعِب
annoying	مزعج	special needs	احتياجات خاصة	garbage	قمامة

Extra vocabulary

heavy rain	مطر غزير	volunteer	متطوع	surprised	مندهش
neighbors	جيران	thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية	skills	مهارات
frightening	مخيف	community	مجتمع	baker	خباز
local	محلي	excited	متحمس	village	قرية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة — *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P	Present	Past	P.P
decide يقرر	decided	decided	speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken
volunteer يتطوع	volunteered	volunteered	teach يُعَلِّم	taught	taught
repair يصلح	repaired	repaired	build يبني	built	built
happen يحدث	happened	happened	break يكسر	broke	broken

Important expressions and prepositions

pick up	يلتقط	late for	متأخر على
play against	يلعب ضد	work for	يعمل لمدة
come into	يأتي إلى - يدخل	helpful for	مساعد ل
feel frightened	يشعر بالخوف	it's important to	من المهم أن
surprised at	مندهش من		

Did you know?

The police, firefighters, and doctors help people in the community for 24 hours a day, every day of the year!

تساعد الشرطة ورجال الإطفاء والأطباء الناس في المجتمع لمدة 24 ساعة في اليوم و كل يوم من أيام السنة.



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



(1)

Listen and read.

Helping the community

We all live in a community and we should all help the people who live in it. Have you ever wanted to be a volunteer? It's a great way to help your community. You can learn new skills, make new friends, and make your neighborhood a better place. We spoke to people in our neighborhood about different ways people can make our community stronger.

نعيش جميعًا في مجتمع وينبغي علينا جميعًا مساعدة الناس الذين يعيشون فيه. هل سبق لك أن أردت أن تكون متطوعًا من قبل؟ إنها طريقة رائعة لمساعدة مجتمعك. يمكنك تعلم مهارات جديدة، تكوين صداقات جديدة ، وجعل منطقتك أفضل. تحدثنا إلى الناس في منطقتنا حول طرق مختلفة يستطيع بها الناس جعل مجتمعنا أقوى.

Habiba



"I decided to pick up garbage with my cousins. The park here is beautiful but there was lots of garbage in it. It was really annoying! We met one morning with gloves, bags, and special sticks to pick up the garbage. We worked for two hours, and then the park looked amazing. Now the park is a nice place to play again and people don't leave their garbage there."

"قررت التقاط القمامة مع أبناء عمي. الحديقة هنا جميلة ولكن كان هناك الكثير من القمامة. كان الأمر مزعجًا حقًا! التقينا ذات صباح ومعنا القفازات والحقائب والعصي الخاصة لالتقاط القمامة. عملنا لمدة ساعتين ، ثم بدت الحديقة مذهلة. الآن الحديقة أصبحت مكانًا جميلًا للعب فيه مرة أخرى والناس لا يتركون القمامة فيها."

Youssef



"My uncle used to be really good at football when he was younger. He doesn't play any more, but he teaches the local children, I love playing on his team! We practice once or twice a week and we play games against other teams. It's tiring, but it's great fun!"

"اعتاد عمي أن يكون جيدًا حقًا في كرة القدم عندما كان أصغر سنًا. هو لم يعد يلعب على الإطلاق ، لكنه يعلم الأطفال المحليين ، أحب اللعب في فريقه! نتدرب مرة أو مرتين في الأسبوع ونلعب ضد فرق أخرى. إنها متعبة ، ولكنها متعة كبيرة!"

Aya



"My grandma used to be a teacher and now she comes into our school sometimes to help children with special needs. She really enjoys it, and the children are really excited to see her!"

"جدتي اعتادت أن تكون معلمة والآن تأتي إلى مدرستنا في بعض الأحيان لمساعدة الأطفال ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة. إنها حقًا تستمتع بذلك ، و الأطفال متحمسون حقًا لرؤيتها!"

Magdy



"My dad is a baker but he is really good at building. Last year, there was heavy rain in our village. It was frightening and lots of people were worried about their homes. My dad helped to repair lots of homes and buildings, to make them safe again. He made life better for our neighbours. Some days I helped him, too!"

"والدي خباز لكنه جيد حقًا في البناء. العام الماضي ، كان هناك مطر غزير في قريتنا. كان الأمر مخيفا وكان الكثير من الناس قلقين بشأن منازلهم. ساعد والدي في إصلاح الكثير من المنازل و المباني ، لجعلها آمنة مرة أخرى. لقد جعل الحياة أفضل لجيراننا.
ساعدته في بعض الأيام أيضًا!"

If you want to help your community, think about what skills you have. How can you help other people? You might be surprised at the new things you can do!

إذا كنت ترغب في مساعدة مجتمعك ، فكر في المهارات التي لديك. كيف يمكنك مساعدة الآخرين؟ قد تتفاجئ بالأشياء الجديدة التي يمكنك القيام بها!

Note

1- If an adjective ends in (ed), it describes how a person feels.

عندما تنتهي الصفة بـ ed فإنها تصف شعور شخص.

e.g. excited / worried

2- If an adjective ends in (ing), it describes the thing that makes a person feels that way.

عندما تنتهي الصفة بـ ing فإنها تصف الشيء.

e.g. amazing / annoying / tiring / frightening

Read and learn.

1. Habiba thought the garbage in the park was annoying.
2. Youssef says football is tiring but great fun.
3. The children at school are excited when Aya's grandma comes in.
4. The heavy rain in Magdy's village was frightening.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What do you want to be? ______________
2. Why do you want to be a volunteer? ______________
3. What can you learn in the community? ______________
4. What do you speak about? ______________

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

annoying - beautiful - sticks - hours - garbage

"I decided to pick up garbage with my cousins. The park here is 1)________ but there was lots of garbage in it. It was really 2)________! We met one morning with gloves, bags, and special 3)________ to pick up the garbage. We worked for two 4)________, and then the park looked amazing .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Heba was really ________ after tennis practice.
   a) exciting b) tiring c) tired d) boring
2. Some travelers were ________ in the thunderstorm.
   a) frightened b) frightening c) boring d) amazing
3. The news I heard was ________.
   a) worry b) worried c) worrying d) excited
4. The book I am reading is really ________.
   a) exciting b) frightened c) worried d) excited
5. I've decided to pick ________ garbage.
   a) up b) by c) for d) at
6. They've built new houses in my ________.
   a) playground b) school c) hospital d) neighborhood
7. They found some ________ and made a campfire.
   a) plastics b) bags c) sticks d) metals
8. The children with ________ needs are learning a lot in class.
   a) usual b) special c) common d) simple



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I'm Aya. My grandma used to be a teacher and now she comes into our school sometimes to help children with special needs. She really enjoys it, and the children are really excited to see her! My dad is a baker but he is really good at building. Last year, there was heavy rain in our village. It was frightening and lots of people were worried about their homes. My dad helped to repair lots of homes and buildings, to make them safe again. He made life better for our neighbors. Some days I helped him, too!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My grandma used to be a ....

   a) doctor   b) pilot   c) teacher   d) nurse

2. The underlined pronoun "she" refers to ....

   a) Aya   b) grandma   c) mother   d) aunt

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What were the people worried about? ....
4. How was the rain in Aya's village? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. important - to - Why - it - is - people - help - other - ?

   ....

2. ever - be - Have - a volunteer - you - wanted - to - ?

   ....

3. tiring, - fun - Football - but - is - great - it's - .

   ....

4. frightening - heavy - The - was - rain - .

   ....



6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Helping the community

Guiding elements:

(neighborhood - garbage - annoying - special sticks - a volunteer - skills - friends)

Help your child deal with such questions.

Vocabulary

library	مكتبة	tomatoes	طماطم
beach	شاطئ	cucumber	خيار
picnic	نزهة	tent	خيمة
rainwater	ماء المطر	camping trip	رحلة تخييم
noise	ضوضاء	journey	رحلة
difficult	صعب	blanket	بطانية
bread	خبز	snack	وجبة خفيفة
flashlight	كشاف	board game	لعبة لوحية

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
damage	يُتلف	damaged	damaged
boil	يغلي / يسلق	boiled	boiled
share	يشارك	shared	shared
join	يلتحق بـ	joined	joined
wash	يغسل	washed	washed

Important expressions and prepositions

ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	help with	يساعد في
at ten o'clock	في تمام الساعة العاشرة	make food for	يعد طعامًا لـ
cut up	يقطع	make a picnic	يجهز طعام للنزهة
need ... for	يحتاج .... لـ	for the journey	من أجل الرحلة





Listen and read.

Dad : Hello Magdy, can you help me?

مرحبا مجدي، هل يمكنك مساعدتي؟

Magdy : Yes, of course! What can I do?

نعم بالطبع! ماذا يمكنني أن أفعل؟

Dad : I'm painting the library today. The rainwater damaged it. We need to move lots of books before we start!

أنا أقوم بطلاء المكتبة اليوم. مياه المطر أتلفتها. نحن بحاجة إلى نقل الكثير من الكتب قبل أن نبدأ

Magdy : I'll help you with that! I can come at ten o'clock after basketball practice.

سأساعدك في ذلك! يمكنني المجيء في تمام الساعة العاشرة بعد تدريب كرة السلة

Dad : Great! I'm going there now to start.

عظيم! أنا ذاهب إلى هناك الآن للبدء.

Magdy : OK Dad, I won't be late.

حسنًا يا أبي ، لن أتأخر.

Dad : Do you think your friends are free? Will you ask them to help?

هل تعتقد أن أصدقاءك غير مشغولين؟ هل من الممكن أن تطلب منهم أن يساعدوا؟

Magdy : Yes, I will. That's a great idea! Ziad can help us move the books and Zein and Fady can help you paint.

نعم ، سأفعل. هذه فكرة رائعة! زياد يمكن أن يساعدنا في نقل الكتب و زين وفادي يمكن أن يساعدوك في الطلاء.

Help your child listen and read.

(2)

and read.

Mom : OK children, we're meeting your cousins at the beach today. Can you help me make a picnic?

حسنًا يا أطفال ، نحن سنقابل أبناء عمكم على الشاطئ اليوم. هل يمكنكم مساعدتي في تجهيز طعام للنزهة؟

Lara : Yes, of course. I'll boil some eggs. Everybody likes those!

نعم ، بالطبع. سأسلق بعض البيض. الجميع يحب البيض المسلوق!

Amir : I'll cut up some tomatoes and cucumbers.

سأقطع بعض الطماطم والخيار.

Mom : Great. I'll make some bread.

عظيم. سأقوم بعمل بعض الخبز.

Lara : I love your bread, Mom! I won't eat it all though. I'll share it!

أنا أحب خبزك يا أمي! ولن آكله كله بالرغم من ذلك. سأشاركه مع الآخرين!

Mom : Yes, Lara! Will you get some bottles of water from the fridge, too?

نعم ، لارا! هل يمكن أن تحضري بعض زجاجات المياه من الثلاجة، أيضًا؟

Lara : Yes, I'll put them in the bag.

نعم ، سأضعهم في الحقيبة.

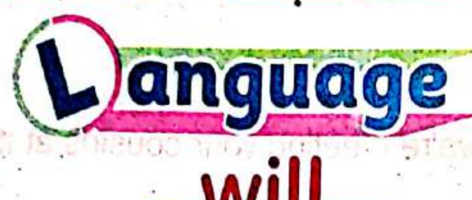
Amir : I'll get the picnic blanket, too. This is going to be fun!

سأحضر بطانية النزهة أيضًا. هذا سيكون ممتعًا!





I'll make you a sandwich.



will

Usage الاستخدام

- We can use " will" for :

1- promises الوعود

e.g. I will buy you a present.

2- requests الطلبات

e.g. Will you help me with my homework?

3- offers العروض

e.g. I will wash the dishes for you.

Form التكوين

Subject + will + inf.

e.g. I will help you.

Negative النفي

Subject + will not + inf.

e.g. I won't come late.

NOTE **'ll = will** **won't = will not**

Question السؤال

Will + subject + inf. ...?

e.g. Will you play a board game with me?

Note

- We can use "Can" for request and offer.

e.g. Can you make some food for the party?

e.g. I can help you make some salad.

Help your child use (will, won't, and can) for offers, promises and requests.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم (can و will,won't) لعمل عروض ووعود وطلبات.



Practice

1 Choose the correct answer from , b, c, or d.

1. Will you .... me with my project?
   a) help b) helps c) helped d) helping
2. I'm thirsty. .... you bring me a glass of water?
   a) Is b) Are c) Can d) Do
3. I'll .... the pens in the bag.
   a) put b) puts c) putting d) to put
4. I .... get the picnic blanket.
   a) 's b) 're c) 'll d) 've
5. .... you get some bottles of water from the fridge?
   a) Does b) Has c) Will d) Is

2 Read and match each sentence with its purpose.

1.	I'll help you with that!	a.	a promise
2.	I won't be late.	b.	a request
3.	Will you ask them to help?	c.	an offer

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( )

3 Read and choose the correct word.

1. The contracted form of will is ('ll / won't).
2. In negative sentences, we use will + not = (don't / won't).
3. After will, we use the infinitive (with / without) to.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



Listen and answer the questions.

1. What's your father doing today?

....

2. What damaged the library?

....

3. When could you come to help your father?

....

4. What sport do you practise?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

won't - put - I'll - got - get

Mom : I think we have everything we need for our camping trip. Will you help me put everything in the car?

Dad : Yes, of course. I'll 1).................... the tent and the bags in the car now.

Reem : 2).. get the picnic bag.

Mom : Thank you, Reem. And don't forget some snacks for the journey.

Reem : Oh, good. I'll 3).................................... some cookies and some fruit.

Mom : Don't get the chocolate cookies, Reem. They're for grandma.

Reem : Ok, I 4).. get them.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Mom says to the children that they are meeting their cousins at the beach today. She asks them to help her make a picnic. Lara says she will boil some eggs because everybody likes them. Amir will cut up some tomatoes and cucumbers. Mom will make some bread. Lara loves her mother's bread and she won't eat it all though. She will share it. Mom asks Lara to get some bottles of water from the fridge.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

(2)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The children are meeting their ....
   a) friends b) relaxed c) cousins d) classmates
2. The underlined word "get" means ....
   a) give b) bring c) drink d) cook

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What will Amir cut up?

....

4. What does mom ask Lara to get?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I .... see you tomorrow at 11 o'clock.
   a) 's b) 'll c) 've d) 'm
2. .... you play a board game with me?
   a) Have b) Will c) Has d) Are
3. I .... forget. Don't worry!
   a) isn't b) hasn't c) doesn't d) won't
4. I'll .... the dishes for you.
   a) wash b) washes c) washing d) washed

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. you - Will - ask - to - go - Mom - the club - to - ?

....

2. help - clean - you - I'll - the kitchen - .

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Camping trip

Guiding elements:

- When will you go? - Where will you go? - Who will you go with?
- How will you go? - What will you take and make?



A CONCERT

Vocabulary

photography club	نادي التصوير	local stores	متاجر محلية
habitat	موطن - مسكن (الحيوانات)	sports equipment	أدوات رياضية
Town Hall	مبنى البلدية	planet	كوكب
tickets	تذاكر	ready	مستعد - جاهز
Repair Day	يوم الإصلاحات	a cake sale	مهرجان خيري لبيع الكيك
furniture	أثاث	electronic devices	آلات إلكترونية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
absorb	يمتص	absorbed	absorbed
decorate	يزين	decorated	decorated
complete	يكمل	completed	completed
relax	يسترخي	relaxed	relaxed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
throw away	يُلقي	threw away	thrown away
bring	يحضر - يجلب	brought	brought
break	يكسر	broke	broken

Important expressions and prepositions

at a concert	في حفلة موسيقية	save money	يدخر مالًا
raise money for	يجمع مالًا لـ	absorb carbon dioxide	يمتص ثاني أكسيد الكربون
ready to	مستعد لـ	throw away	يتخلص من - يرمي
put up	يُعلِّق	get ready	يستعد
at home	بالمنزل	repair clothes	يصلح الملابس
bring to	يحضر لـ	sell tickets	يبيع تذاكر

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.





(3)

and read.

Repair Day!

Do you have things at home which are old and broken? Don't throw them away! Bring them to our Repair Day and we will try to repair them. We have volunteers from the community with lots of different skills, and they are ready to help you.

Help the planet and save money.

We can repair clothes, furniture, electronic devices, and lots more!

Come to the Town Hall on Saturday May 7th from 10 am to 5 pm.

Tickets are LE10. We are raising money for new sports equipment at the community center. You can also buy food and drink.

يوم الإصلاحات!

هل لديك أشياء في المنزل قديمة ومكسورة؟ لا تتخلص منها! أحضرهم إلينا في يوم الإصلاح الخاص بنا وسنحاول إصلاحها. لدينا متطوعون من المجتمع ولديهم الكثير من المهارات المختلفة ، وهم على استعداد تام لمساعدتك.

ساعد الكوكب وادخر المال. نحن نستطيع أن نصلح الملابس، الأثاث، الأجهزة الإلكترونية، وأكثر من ذلك. تعالي إلى مبنى البلدية في يوم السبت الموافق 7 مايو من العاشرة صباحًا حتى الخامسة مساءً. التذاكر بعشرة جنيهات. نحن نجمع مالًا للأدوات الرياضية في مركز المجتمع. يمكنك أيضًا شراء الطعام والشراب.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب



1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Are gardens important?

....

2. What do you have in your area?

....

3. What can people do at the garden?

....

4. What will make the garden a cool place?

....



2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

skills - volunteers - home - Repair - Why

Reem : Do you have things at home which are old and broken?

Heba : Yes, I do.

Reem : Please bring them to our 1).. Day.

Heba : OK. 2)..?

Reem : We try to repair them.

Heba : Do you have 3).. from the community?

Reem : Yes, we have volunteers with lots of different 4)... .

Heba : OK. I'll bring them and help.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Children in my neighborhood are very helpful. They decided to help the environment. They want to build a garden in their area. The garden will need a lot of money to be built. So, they decided to raise money. They need volunteers to paint and decorate the garden. The garden needs plants, trees and flowers. Mona decided to make a poster. Ali made a cake sale. At the end, they raised a lot of money.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

2. They want to build a .... in their area.

a) club b) garden c) cinema d) school

3. The underlined word "raise" means ....

a) take b) collect c) give d) send

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does the garden need? ....

4. What did Mona decide to do? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hala .... money to help the community.
   a) eats b) rises c) raises d) plays
2. I'll .... the tables and chairs out.
   a) get b) gets c) got d) getting
3. .... you get some juice and water?
   a) Are b) Will c) Have d) Does
4. We can .... clothes and furniture.
   a) damage b) spoil c) repair d) break
5. I .... make fresh orange juice to sell to the people in my neighborhood.
   a) 'll b) 's c) 've d) 're

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. buy - Magdy - can - and - food - drink - .

   ....

2. absorb - dioxide - Trees - carbon - .

   ....

3. some - you - Will - get - and - water - juice - ?

   ....

4. raising - they - What - are - for - money - ?

   ....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Helping the planet

Guiding elements:

(repair - furniture - electronic - raise - equipment - buy - volunteers)

....

....

....

Key vocabulary

turtle	سلحفاة	flippers	زعانف
scissors	مقص	fishing net	شبكة صيد

Extra vocabulary

marine animals	حيوانات بحرية	suddenly	فجأة	carefully	بحرص - بعناية
shallow water	مياه ضحلة	car park	موقف سيارات	shell	صَدَفة
clear water	مياه صافية	hard	خشن	injured	مُصاب
fishing boats	قوارب الصيد	charity	مؤسسة خيرية	accident	حادث

Definitions

flippers	some sea animals have these to help them move	زعانف
fishing nets	what fishing boats use to catch lots of fish	شباك الصيد
strange	unusual or surprising	غريب
bite	cut something with your teeth	يقضم - يعض
disappear	when something goes away and you can't see it	يختفي

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة — *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P	Present		Past	P.P
wave	يلوح بيده	waved	waved	bite	يعض - يقضم	bit	bitten
touch	يلمس	touched	touched	drive	يقود	drove	driven
rescue	ينقذ	rescued	rescued	hold	يحمل	held	held
contact	يتصل	contacted	contacted	stick	يلصق - يلتصق	stuck	stuck

Important expressions and prepositions

on the beach	على الشاطئ	at the end	في النهاية	look for	يبحث عن
close to	قريب من	wave to	يلوح بيده لـ	careful with	حريص بشأن
a pair of	زوج من	bad for	ضار لـ	get out	يخرج
excited about	متحمس لـ	drive into	يسوق (في - إلى)	step back	يرجع للخلف

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



(4)

and read.

The turtle



Reem and Talia were playing on the beach with their parents. Suddenly, Reem saw something strange in the sea.

"Look, Talia. Is that a ball?"

The two girls walked slowly to the strange object. It looked like a fishing net, but they could also see a small head, and something hard. It was a shell!

"It's a turtle!" said Talia " It's stuck in the net," said Reem. "It's frightened!"

They waved to Mom and Dad on the beach.

"We've found a turtle. It has a problem!" said Reem. Mom and Dad quickly came into the sea.

"What can we do?" asked Talia. The net was around the turtle's neck and flippers. "Can we touch it?"

"Sea turtles don't bite," said Mom. "But you need to be careful with wild animals." "We should phone someone to help," said Dad. "I saw a poster with the name of a charity which rescues turtles," said Talia. "I'll phone it," said Mom.

كانت ريم وتاليا تلعبان على الشاطئ مع والديهما. فجأة ، رأت ريم شيئًا غريبًا في البحر.
"انظري ، يا تاليا. هل هذه كرة؟"مشت الفتاتان ببطء إلى الشيء الغريب. بدا الأمر وكأنه شبكة صيد ، لكن استطاعوا أيضا رؤية رأس صغير وشيء صلب. كانت صدفة! قالت تاليا: "إنها سلحفاة!" إنها عالقة في الشبكة"، قالت ريم. "إنها خائفة!" ولوحوا للأم والأب على الشاطئ. قالت ريم: "لقد وجدنا سلحفاة. لديها مشكلة!"
جاءت الأم والأب بسرعة إلى البحر سألت تاليا"ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل؟". كانت الشبكة حول رقبة السلحفاة وزعانفها.
قالت تاليا "هل يمكننا لمسها؟" قالت الأم:" السلاحف البحرية لا تعض". "لكن عليكي أن تتوخي الحذر مع الحيوانات البرية."
قال الأب: "يجب أن نتصل بشخص ما للمساعدة،" قالت تاليا:" رأيت ملصقا يحمل اسم مؤسسة خيرية تنقذ السلاحف".
قالت امي:" سأتصل بها".

There was a small café on the beach with a poster and a phone number for the charity. Mom called it.



"Hello. My daughters have found a turtle in the sea. It has a net around its neck, and it can't swim well."

"We'll come to the beach now," said the woman.

Soon, a car drove into the car park and a man and a woman got out. "I'm Mariam and this is Adel," the woman said.

"Thank you for coming," said Talia. Dad and Reem were standing close to the turtle in shallow water. Mariam got a small pair of scissors from the bag. With Adel holding the turtle, she carefully cut off the net.

Everybody stepped back and the turtle slowly began to swim. It could move easily now. They watched it swim away. Before it disappeared, Dad took a photo.

"Thank you! You saved the turtle's life!" Mariam said to the family.

"Thank you for calling us. We always want to help," said Adel.

كان هناك مقهى صغير على الشاطئ وعليه ملصق ورقم هاتف للمؤسسة الخيرية. أمي اتصلت به. "مرحبا. لقد وجدت بناتي سلحفاة في البحر. ويوجد شبكة حول رقبتها ، ولا يمكنها السباحة جيدا." قالت المرأة:" سنأتي إلى الشاطئ الآن". سرعان ما دخلت سيارة إلى موقف السيارات وخرج رجل وامرأة. قالت المرأة: "أنا مريم وهذا عادل." قالت تاليا:" شكرًا على حضوركما". كان أبي وريم يقفان بالقرب من السلحفاة في المياه الضحلة. أحضرت مريم مقص صغير من الحقيبة. وقام عادل بمسك السلحفاة ، وقطعت الشبكة بحذر. رجع الجميع خطوة للخلف وبدأت السلحفاة تسبح ببطء. يمكن أن تتحرك بسهولة الآن. لقد شاهدوها تسبح بعيدًا. قبل أن تختفي ، التقط أبي صورة. "شكرا لكم! قالت مريم للعائلة لقد أنقذتم حياة السلحفاة!" قال عادل: "شكرًا لكم على الاتصال بنا. نحن دائمًا نريد أن نساعد."

Read again and answer the following questions.

1. What was around the turtle's neck?

....

2. What did Mariam do to help the turtle?

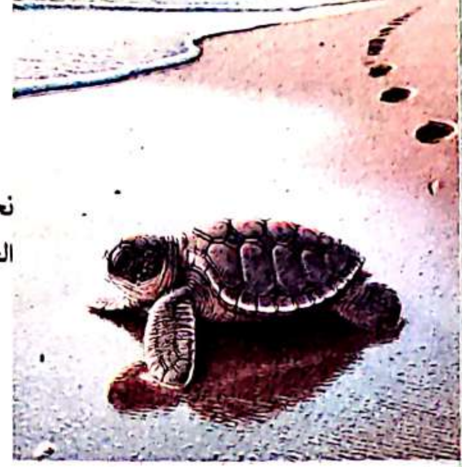
....

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

and read.

Marine Animal Rescue Center



We are looking for volunteers! We need people to help us at the Marine Animal Rescue Center.

نحن نبحث عن متطوعين! نحن نحتاج الناس لمساعدتنا في مركز إنقاذ الحيوانات البحرية.

Every year, we have more visitors who come on vacation to enjoy the beaches and the beautiful clear blue water. But when we have more visitors, we have more problems for our marine animals. There are more boats, more water sports, more garbage, and more lights at night from buildings and hotels. All of this is bad for turtles and other marine animals.

كل عام ، لدينا المزيد من الزوار الذين يأتون في إجازة للاستمتاع بالشواطئ والمياه الزرقاء الصافية الجميلة. ولكن عندما يكون لدينا المزيد من الزوار ، فإننا نواجه المزيد من المشاكل مع حيواناتنا البحرية. هناك المزيد من القوارب ، والمزيد من الرياضات المائية ، ، "مزيد من القمامة ، والمزيد من الأضواء في الليل من المباني والفنادق. كل هذا ضار بالسلاحف والحيوانات البحرية الأخرى.

Many turtles have accidents with boats, or they get stuck in fishing nets. We need volunteers to help us look after injured turtles at the rescue center.

تتعرض العديد من السلاحف لحوادث القوارب أو تَعلَق في شباك الصيد. نحتاج إلى متطوعين لمساعدتنا في رعاية السلاحف المصابة في مركز الإنقاذ.

As more hotels are built, turtles lose their beach habitats. We need to protect the beaches where turtles come to lay their eggs. We need volunteers to work at night on the beaches, to protect turtles when they are laying their eggs. If you feel excited about helping us protect turtles, please contact us on our website.

مع بناء المزيد من الفنادق ، تفقد السلاحف مواطنها الشاطئية. نحن بحاجة لحماية الشواطئ حيث تأتي السلاحف لتضع بيضها. نحتاج إلى متطوعين للعمل ليلاً على الشواطئ لحماية السلاحف عندما تضع بيضها. إذا كنت متحمسًا لمساعدتنا في حماية السلاحف ، يرجى الاتصال بنا على موقعنا على الإنترنت.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where were Reem and Talia playing?

____

2. What did Reem see?

____

3. What did the strange object look like?

____

4. What was the object?

____

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

charity - strange - easy - flippers - fishing net

While Reem and Talia were playing on the beach, they saw something 1)________ in the sea. They couldn't see what it was. It was a turtle, and a 2)__________was around its neck. It couldn't move its head or its 3)______ and it was in danger. So, Reem's mom quickly phoned an animal rescue 4)______ . Soon, a man and woman arrived to help the turtle.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

We are looking for volunteers! We need people to help us at the Marine Animal Rescue Center. Every year, we have more visitors who come on vacation to enjoy the beaches and the beautiful clear blue water. But when we have more visitors, we have more problems for our marine animals. There are more boats, more water sports, more garbage, and more lights at night from buildings and hotels. All of this is bad for turtles and other marine animals.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Marine animals live in ______________________ .
   a) tea b) oil c) water d) coffee
2. The underlined word "bad" means ______________________ .
   a) sad b) not good c) tall d) good

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



B) Answer the following questions.

3. What are they looking for? ....

4. Why do visitors come on vacation? ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. They saw a ____________ thing in the sea. It isn't normal.
   a) strange b) familiar c) common d) popular
2. There was a fishing ____________ around the turtle's neck.
   a) bed b) head c) net d) set
3. Some sea animals have ____________ to help them move.
   a) wings b) feathers c) flippers d) footprints
4. When something goes away and you can't see it, it ____________.
   a) disappears b) appears c) comes d) arrives
5. The turtle is ____________ in the net.
   a) stick b) stuck c) cut d) run

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. turtles - bite - Sea - don't - people - .

....

2. around - turtle's - What - neck - was - the - ?

....

3. café - was - a small - There - the - on - beach - .

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Turtles problems

Guiding elements:

(accidents - boats - stuck - fishing nets - volunteers - protect - lay)

....

....

....

Lesson (5) LIFE AT NIGHT

Listen and repeat.

Nocturnal animals حيوانات ليلية (تنشط ليلًا)


fennec fox
ثعلب الفنك


rat
فأر


dorcas gazelle
غزال الدوركاس


owl
بومة

Diurnal animals حيوانات نهارية (تنشط نهارًا)


donkey
حمار


goat
معزة



camel
جمل


horse
حصان

Extra vocabulary

during	أثناء	predators	حيوانات مفترسة
nocturnal	ليلي (نَشِط ليلًا)	senses	حواس
diurnal	نهاري (نَشِط نهارًا)	differently	بشكل مختلف
prey	فريسة	artificial lights	أضواء اصطناعية
awake	يقظ - نَشِط	darkness	ظلام
light bulb	مصباح كهربي		

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
compare	يقارن	compared	compared
hunt	يصطاد	hunted	hunted
develop	يطور	developed	developed
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
adapt	يتكيف	adapted	adapted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
hide	يختبئ	hid	hidden
hear	يسمع	heard	heard

Important expressions and prepositions

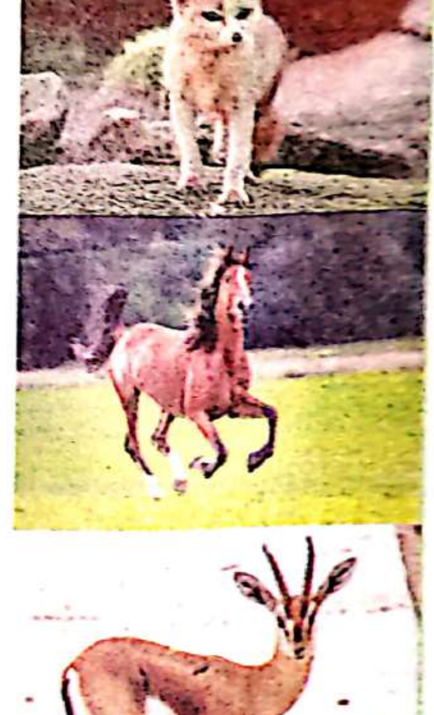
compared to	مقارنة مع	useful for	مفيد لـ
different to / from	مختلف عن	sleep for	ينام لمدة
adapt to	يتكيف، مع	hunt for	يصطاد من أجل
hide from	يختبئ من	look for	يبحث عن
come out	يخرج	difficult for	صعب على
in the day	في النهار (نهارًا)	at night	ليلًا

Listen and read.

Nocturnal Animals by Youssef Sabry

You do not often see a fennec fox, because they are nocturnal. That means they only come out at night. In my project, I'm going to tell you about the nocturnal animals.

لا يمكنك غالبًا رؤية ثعلب الفنك ، لأنها حيوانات ليلية. هذا يعني أنهم يخرجون فقط في الليل. في مشروعي، سأخبركم عن الحيوانات الليلية.



What are nocturnal and diurnal animals?

Nocturnal animals sleep in the day but are awake at night. They hunt for their prey or look for food when it is dark. Other animals like camels and donkeys are diurnal, which means they are awake in the day. We see these more often than nocturnal ones!

ما هي الحيوانات الليلية و الحيوانات النهارية؟

تنام الحيوانات الليلية في النهار ولكنها نشطة في الليل. إنهم يبحثون عن فرائسهم أو يبحثون عن الطعام عندما يحل الظلام.

الحيوانات الأخرى مثل الجمال والحمير تسمى نهارية ، مما يعني أنها نشطة في النهار. نرى هذه الحيوانات النهارية غالبًا أكثر من تلك الحيوانات الليلية!

Why are some animals nocturnal?

In hot countries, it is difficult for some animals to find food when it is very hot. It is better to sleep in the day and come out at night when it is cooler. It can also be easier for small animals to hide from predators at night. It is safer to come out when it is dark because they can't easily see them.

لماذا بعض الحيوانات ليلية؟

في البلدان الحارة ، يصعب على بعض الحيوانات العثور على الطعام عندما يكون الجو شديد الحرارة. من الأفضل أن تنام في النهار وتخرج في الليل عندما يكون الجو أكثر برودة.

قد يكون من الأسهل أيضًا على الحيوانات الصغيرة الاختباء من الحيوانات المفترسة في الليل. والخروج في الظلام يكون أكثر أمنًا لأن الحيوانات المفترسة لا يستطيعون رؤيتهم بسهولة.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك ان يستمع ويقرأ.

How are nocturnal animals different from diurnal animals?

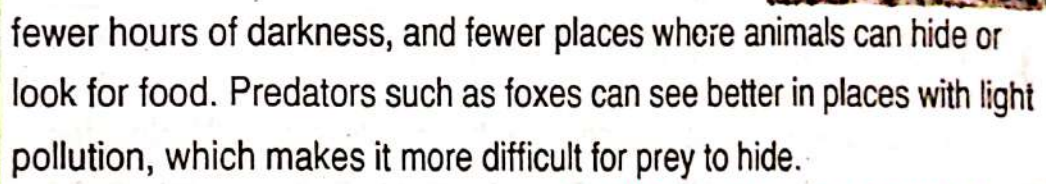
The senses of nocturnal animals have developed differently to diurnal animals. They have adapted to work when it is dark. For example, owls have large eyes that help them to see in the dark. Nocturnal animals also have a very good sense of hearing. It is important to be able to hear well if it is difficult to see.

كيف تختلف الحيوانات الليلية عن الحيوانات النهارية؟

تطورت حواس الحيوانات الليلية بشكل مختلف عن الحيوانات النهارية. لقد تأقلموا على العمل عندما يحل الظلام. على سبيل المثال ، البوم لها عيون واسعة تساعدهم على الرؤية في الظلام. تتمتع الحيوانات الليلية أيضًا بحاسة سمع جيدة جدًا. من المهم أن تكون قادرا على السمع جيدًا إذا كان من الصعب الرؤية.

What problems do nocturnal animals have?

There is often light pollution in cities. Light pollution is when there are artificial lights at night, for example from houses, stores, offices, and traffic. This is a problem for nocturnal animals. There are



fewer hours of darkness, and fewer places where animals can hide or look for food. Predators such as foxes can see better in places with light pollution, which makes it more difficult for prey to hide.

ما هي المشاكل التي تعاني منها الحيوانات الليلية؟

غالبا ما يكون هناك تلوث ضوئي في المدن. يحدث التلوث الضوئي عندما تكون هناك أضواء اصطناعية في الليل ، على سبيل المثال من المنازل والمتاجر والمكاتب وحركة المرور. هذه مشكلة للحيوانات الليلية. إذ تقل ساعات الظلام ، وأماكن أقل للحيوانات للاختباء أو البحث عن الطعام. يمكن للحيوانات المفترسة مثل الثعالب أن ترى بشكل أفضل في الأماكن ذات التلوث الضوئي ، مما يجعل من الصعب على الفريسة الاختباء.

In conclusion, it is useful for some animals to be nocturnal, because they can hide and find more food. It is also easier to sleep in the day in very hot countries. People are causing problems for nocturnal animals because there are more lights in cities, and less darkness.

في الختام ، من المفيد أن تكون بعض الحيوانات ليلية ، لأنها تستطيع الاختباء والعثور على المزيد من الطعام. كما أنه من الأسهل النوم في النهار في البلدان شديدة الحرارة. يسبب الناس مشاكل للحيوانات الليلية لأن هناك المزيد من الأضواء في المدن، وظلام أقل.



General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What are the kinds of animals in the text? ....
2. Which birds that have large eyes? ....
3. Why do these birds have large eyes? ....
4. What's the best sense that nocturnal animals have? ....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

owls - come - fennec - nocturnal - Why

Nour : Do you often see a fennec fox?

Ola : No, I don't.

Nour : 1)..............................?

Ola : Because they are 2)..............................

Nour : What does "nocturnal" mean?

Ola : It means they 3).............................. out at night.

Nour : Can you give me examples of nocturnal animals?

Ola : Rats, fennec foxes and 4)..............................

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Dorcas gazelles live in and near the hot dry deserts of North Africa. They are small animals and they are the same color as sand. They sleep for most of the day when it is hot. At night it is cooler so they look for leaves, fruits, and flowers from desert plants. Dorcas gazelles do not need to drink water because they get all the water they need from their food.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They live near the .... dry deserts.
   a) cold b) hot c) cool d) windy
2. The general idea of the text is about ....
   a) sleep b) Dorcas gazelles c) desert d) plants

B) Answer the following questions.

3. When do dorcas gazelles sleep? ....
4. Why don't they need to drink water? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Dorcas gazelles .... for most of the day when it is hot.
   a) sleep b) dream c) sing d) fly
2. Some animals are nocturnal because it's .... to hunt at night.
   a) harder b) easier c) taller d) shorter
3. Owls have large .... that help them see in the dark.
   a) eyes b) wings c) ears d) feathers
4. Nocturnal animals have a good sense of ....
   a) touching b) hearing c) knowing d) flying
5. Light pollution is .... for nocturnal animals.
   a) good b) right c) bad d) better
6. Nocturnal animals don't sleep .... night.
   a) in b) on c) at d) with
7. Predators can .... their prey better in places with light pollution.
   a) see b) hear c) listen d) read
8. Nocturnal animals look for food when it is ....
   a) hot b) dark c) light d) heavy

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. and - Camels - donkeys - diurnal - are - .

   ....

2. animals - do - What - problems - nocturnal - have - ?

   ....

3. large - Owls - eyes - have - .

   ....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Nocturnal Animals

Guiding elements:

(sleep - awake - night - hunt - see - hear - better - hide - predators)

Lesson (6) WRITING AN INTRODUCTION

Vocabulary

Light pollution	التلوث الضوئي	charities	جمعيات خيرية
Plastic pollution	التلوث البلاستيكي	noise pollution	التلوث الضوضائي
Urban environments	البيئات الحضرية	air pollution	تلوث الهواء
Introduction	مقدمة	heat	حرارة
humans	البشر	concrete	خرسانة
natural world	عالم طبيعي	traffic	حركة المرور
areas	مناطق	sub-titles	عناوين فرعية
topic	موضوع	figures	أرقام - أشكال
features	ملامح	clear	واضح
rural	ريفي	busy	مشغول - مزدحم

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	noticed
cause	يُسبب	caused	caused
stop	يوقف - يمنع	stopped	stopped
explain	يوضح - يفسر	explained	explained
include	يتضمن - يشتمل على	included	included
research	يجري بحثًا	researched	researched
hope	يأمل	hoped	hoped
create	يبتكر - يخلق	created	created

Important expressions and prepositions

get bigger	يزداد حجمًا	lots of	كثيرًا من
find out	يستكشف	at any time	في أي وقت

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

and read.

Light pollution: التلوث الضوئي:

Did you know that humans make more artificial light now than at any time in the past? Cities are getting bigger and stores, houses, and traffic all make light. We wanted to find out what happens to the natural world when there is a lot of artificial light.

هل تعلم أن البشر يصنعون ضوءا اصطناعيًا الآن أكثر من أي وقت مضى؟ المدن تكبر والمتاجر والمنازل وحركة المرور كلها تتسبب في الضوء. أردنا معرفة ما يحدث للعالم الطبيعي عندما يكون هناك الكثير من الضوء الاصطناعي.

Plastic pollution: تلوث البلاستيك:

Did you know that it can take 400 years for plastic to disappear in the sea? This causes big problems for animals in the sea. I have researched what causes plastic pollution and why we need to stop it.

هل تعلم أن الأمر قد يستغرق ٤٠٠ سنة للمواد البلاستيكية لتختفي من البحر؟ هذا يسبب مشاكل كبيرة للحيوانات في البحر. لقد بحثت في أسباب التلوث البلاستيكي ولماذا نحتاج إلى إيقافه.

Urban environments: البيئات الحضرية:

Did you know that urban areas are often hotter than rural areas? This might not be surprising because concrete and buildings can absorb heat. This makes the air around them hotter. This is my project about the urban environment and why it can be a difficult place to live.

هل تعلم أن المناطق الحضرية غالبًا ما تكون أكثر سخونة من المناطق الريفية؟ قد لا يكون هذا مفاجئًا لأن الخرسانة والمباني يمكنها امتصاص الحرارة. هذا يجعل الهواء من حولهم أكثر سخونة. هذا هو مشروعي البحثي حول البيئة الحضرية ولماذا يمكن أن يكون مكانًا صعبًا للعيش فيه.

Information about writing an introduction

When you write an introduction to a project, you have to make the topic very clear. You can do this by starting with the question that you are going to answer in the project. You can also explain what you are going to do.

عندما تكتب مقدمة لمشروع ما، عليك أن تجعل الموضوع واضحًا للغاية. يمكنك القيام بذلك من خلال البدء بالسؤال الذي ستجيب عليه في المشروع. ويمكنك أيضًا شرح ما ستفعله.

- Phrases to see in an introduction. عبارات تراها في المقدمة

- I have researched .... لقد بحثت............
- My project is about .... مشروعي عن ....
- We wanted to find out .... أردنا أن نكتشف ....

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What kind of pollution is the text about?

....

2. Do humans make more artificial light now than in the past?

....

3. What makes or causes light?

....

4. What do you want to find out?

....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

rural - concrete - urban - environment - air

Did you know that urban areas are often hotter than 1)................areas? This might not be surprising because 2)......... and buildings can absorb heat. This makes the 3)......... around them hotter. This is my project about the urban 4).........and why it can be a difficult place to live.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Did you know that plants and trees can help clean the air in busy cities and urban environments? Plants absorb carbon dioxide and they make oxygen. I have researched how we can create more green spaces in our cities and how this will create cleaner air in urban environments.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the passage is about ....

   a) trees b) plants c) air d) plants and trees

2. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

   a) chairs b) plants c) cars d) books

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do plants absorb? ....

4. How can plants help in busy cities? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I have .... what causes plastic pollution.
   a) researched b) looked c) disappeared d) played
2. .... are getting bigger.
   a) Oceans b) Cities c) Lakes d) Rivers
3. It can take 400 years for plastic to .... in the sea.
   a) appear b) look c) happen d) disappear
4. .... causes big problems for animals in the sea.
   a) Gold b) Silver c) Metal d) Plastic
5. Urban areas are .... than rural areas.
   a) cooler b) colder c) hotter d) cold
6. Concrete and buildings can .... heat.
   a) give b) take c) absorb d) borrow
7. .... can help clean the air.
   a) Water b) Sand c) Dust d) Trees

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. what - researched - I - have - pollution - causes - .

   ....

2. absorb - buildings - Concrete - can - and - heat - .

   ....

3. help - do - What - to - can - you - ?

   ....



6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

How to help your community

Guiding elements:

(trees - plants - researched - create - environment)



Listen and repeat.


sparrow
عصفور


dove
يمامة


crow
غراب


hoopoe
هدهد

Vocabulary

flamingo	طائر الفلامنجو	bulbul	بلبل
quiet	هادئ	everybody	كل شخص
the countryside	الريف	early	مبكر
bright	لامع - ساطع	together	معًا - سويًا
asleep	نائم	morning	الصباح
already	بالفعل	blackbird	شحرور "طائر أسود"
deafening	تصم الآذان (عالية جدًا)	sadly	بحزن
noisy	مزعج	soon	قريبًا - حالًا

Important expressions and prepositions

wake up	يستيقظ	sing together	يغنوا معًا
for hours	لساعات	look out of	يطل من خارج
ten-year-old	ذات عشر سنوات	at night	في المساء
compared to	مقارنةً بـ	too bright	لامع جدًا
turn off	يطفئ	fly over	يطير فوق
at first	في البداية		

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.





Speely Sparrow was asleep. It was dark and quiet. Then
a noise woke him up. Boomy Blackbird was singing loudly.
The singing was annoying. Speely said, "Please be quiet. It's night! I was sleeping!"
Boomy flew over to Speely's tree."I'm sorry," he said. "The lights in people's houses wake me up. I feel excited, so I sing!"
"Ah yes," said Speely, "the lights are strong and they're much brighter than the old ones."
"I don't know what to do," Boomy said sadly.
Speely said,"I know! We can tell people that their lights are too bright. We can sing together."
"Good idea!" said Boomy.
So the two birds sang outside all the windows in the street. But nobody heard. Everybody was sleeping.
Boomy said, "Can we get help?"
Speely said, "Yes, I'll ask a friend. Dovy Dove is always up early!"
So Dovy sang with them, but only Mrs Samia heard
because her baby was already awake. The next night, Billy Bulbul joined them. The birds sang for hours. But
everybody was still sleeping and nobody heard.



So the next night, Speely and Boomy brought all their friends. All the birds sang very loudly.

The noise was deafening! Everybody woke up and looked out of their windows.

Ten-year-old Amira said to her mom, "The birds are very loud! Why are they singing now? It's night!"

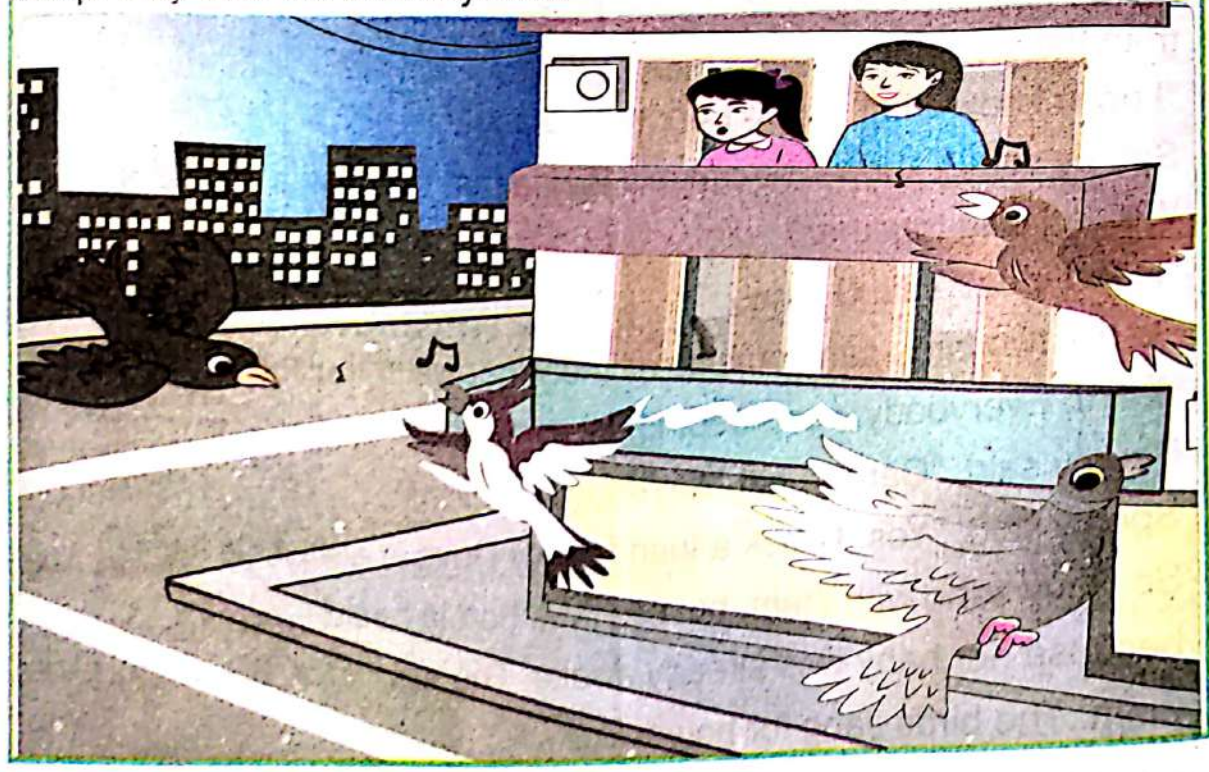
"It was dark at night when I was a little girl," said her mom. "Look how bright the lights are shining now."

"Mom, maybe the lights wake up the birds, so they are not sleeping at night," said Amira. "They think it's morning because the lights are waking them up. Let's ask people to turn off their lights at night, when there is nobody around."

"What a good idea, Amira," said her mom.

"That will help the environment and help the birds, too."

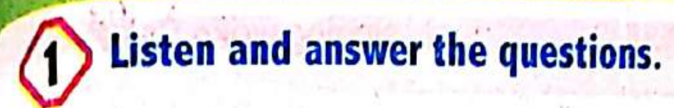
Everybody agreed and soon it was dark again at night. The birds could sleep. They were not tired anymore.



Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.





نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Which bird was Speely?

....

2. What woke him up?

....

3. Which bird was singing loudly?

....

4. What did Speely Sparrow ask the Blackbird?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

long - awake - For - noise - birds

Anas : Why are you awake, Seif?

Seif : Because there's a lot of 1) ....

Anas : What makes the noise?

Seif : I think the 2) .... are singing.

Anas : How 3) .... have the birds sung?

Seif : 4) .... two hours.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Doves and sparrows are ....

   a) birds b) reptiles c) subjects d) sports

2. When all birds sang together, the noise was ....

   a) deaf b) deafens c) deafened d) deafening

3. The birds sang .... hours.

   a) to b) in c) for d) with

4. The ______________________ singing woke Speel, a...

   a) quiet   b) calm   c) loud   d) peaceful

5. It was ______________________ when Boomy sang loudly.

   a) annoyed   b) annoying   c) excited   d) exciting

6. Boomy felt ______________________ and wanted to sing.

   a) excited   b) exciting   c) boring   d) relaxing

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. light - people's - woke - The - in - houses - up - me -.

   ....

2. we - help - get - Can - ?

   ....

3. Amira - mom - did - her - What - and - do - ?

   ....

4. strong - much - The - are - lights - and - brighter - .

   ....

5 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Birds and sleep

Guiding elements:

(light - singing - help - asleep - turned off - became quiet - noise - loud music - can't sleep)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Writing Corner

Helping the community

We all live in a community and we should all help the people who live in it. Have you ever wanted to be a volunteer? It's a great way to help your community. You can learn new skills, make new friends and make your neighborhood a better place. We spoke to people in our neighborhood about different ways people can make our community stronger.

Dorcas gazelles

Dorcas gazelles live in and near the hot dry deserts of North Africa. They are small animals and they are the same color as sand. They sleep for most of the day when it is hot. At night it is cooler so they look for leaves, fruits, and flowers from desert plants. Dorcas gazelles do not need to drink water because they get all the water they need from their food.

Animal Rescue Charity

While the children were playing on the beach, they saw something strange in the sea. It was a turtle, and a fishing net was around its neck. The turtle was in danger. They quickly phoned an animal rescue charity. So, they arrived to help the turtle. The man held the turtle while the woman cut the fishing net with some scissors. They weren't afraid because turtles don't bite.

Nocturnal animals

In hot countries, it is difficult for some animals to find food when it is very hot. It is better to sleep in the day and come out at night when it is cooler. It can also be easier for small animals to hide from predators at night. It is safer to come out when it is dark because they can't easily see them.

Help your child learn how to write a paragraph.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يكتب فقرة.



Dictation on Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

مجتمع	....	حي - مجاورة	....
مخيف	....	مزعج	....
أمطار غزيرة	....	قمامة	....
قرية	....	متعب	....
نار المعسكر	....	عصا خاصة	....

Lesson (2)

كشاف	....	مكتبة	....
طماطم	....	شاطئ	....
خيار	....	نزهة	....
خيمة	....	ضوضاء	....
وجبة خفيفة	....	خبز	....

Lesson (3)

متاجر محلية	....	نادي التصوير	....
كوكب	....	موطن	....
أدوات رياضية	....	تذاكر	....
مستعد	....	أثاث	....
أجهزة إلكترونية	....	يوم الإصلاحات	....

Lesson (4)

مؤسسة خيرية	....	سلحفاة	....
صدفة	....	مقص	....
حادث	....	زعانف	....
مصاب	....	شبكة صيد	....
غريب	....	حيوانات بحرية	....

Lessons (5 & 6)

معزة	....	ثعلب الفنك	....
حرارة	....	غزال الدوركاس	....
تلوث الهواء	....	فأر	....
التلوث الضوئي	....	بومة	....
التلوث البلاستيكي	....	حمار	....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.



Review on Unit (8)

Adjectives



annoyed	مُتضايق - منزعج	amazed	مندهش
annoying	مزعج	amazing	مذهل
excited	متحمس	worried	قلق
frightened	خائف	loud	عالي الصوت
frightening	مُخيف	quiet	هادئ
tired	مُتعب	strange	غريب
tiring	مُتعِب	bright	ساطع - لامع

Animals



fennec fox	ثعلب الفينك	bite	يعض
owl	بومة	fishing net	شبكة صيد
dorcas gazelle	غزال الدوركاس	flippers	زعانف
nocturnal	حيوان ليلي (ينشط ليلًا)	diurnal	حيوان نهاري (ينشط نهارًا)

Others

neighborhood	حي - منطقة سكنية	garbage	قمامة
stick	عصا	with special needs	ذوي الهمم
Town Hall	مبنى البلدية	stuck	محشور - عالق
plastic pollution	تلوث المخلفات البلاستيكية	urban environments	بيئات حضرية
light pollution	التلوث الضوئي	concrete	خرسانة



will

Usage الاستخدام

- We can use " will" for :

1- promises الوعود

e.g. I will buy you a present.

2- requests الطلبات

e.g. Will you help me with my homework?

3- offers العروض

e.g. I will wash the dishes for you.

Form التكوين

Subject + will + inf.

e.g. I will help you.

Negative النفي

Subject + will not + inf.

e.g. I won't come late.

NOTE 'll = will   won't = will not

Question السؤال

Will + subject + inf. ...?

e.g. Will you play a board game with me?

Note

- We can use "Can" for request and offer.

e.g. Can you make some food for the party?

e.g. I can help you make some salad.

Exam On Unit (8)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who come to enjoy the beaches every year? ....
2. What problems do we have when we have more visitors? ....
3. What problems do the building and hotels cause? ....
4. What animals are these problems bad for? ....

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box:

habitats - cool - community - relax - trees

Amr : What is a community garden?

Bilal : It's a place where you can 1) .... and be quiet.

Amr : What makes the garden a 2) .... place?

Bilal : Planting flowers in it.

Amr : What are 3) .... for birds and insects?

Bilal : Plants and 4) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In ancient Egypt, there was a village called Deir el-Medina. The people from the village worked in the Valley of the Kings. There were 68 houses. The walls of the houses were made of bricks and the doors were made of wood. The people painted their houses white, with red doors. The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there weren't any bedrooms. People usually slept on the roof because it was very <u>hot</u> at night.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The houses didn't have any ....
   a) living rooms b) bedrooms c) roofs d) kitchens
2. The underlined word "hot" is the opposite of ....
   a) sunny b) rainy c) windy d) cold

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What was the name of the village? ....
4. How many houses were there? ....

The Reader

3 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Fares wasn't interested to see Granddad's village. (   )
2. They built new houses instead of the theater. (   )

4 Complete the following.

1. Waleed and Fares saw the ________ where Granddad used to teach.
2. Waleed and Fares visited the house where ____________ used to live.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The book I am reading is really ____________.
   a) excited b) bored c) worried d) exciting
2. My father is sleeping. I ____________ make too much noise.
   a) hasn't b) isn't c) doesn't d) won't
3. ____________ you make some juice for the guests?
   a) Does b) Has c) Is d) Can
4. ____________ you help me with my project?
   a) Does b) Is c) Has d) Will

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. and - Hamsters - owls - foxes - nocturnal - are - .

____

2. raising - they - Why - are - money - ?

____

7 Write a text of EFTW (50) words.

Guiding elements:

A community garden

(place - relax - flowers - cool - trees - environment - volunteers)

____

____



أسئلة من امتحانات المحافظات على الوحدتين (7 - 8)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Judy is rich ________ to buy an expensive mobile.
   a) enough b) too c) so d) that
2. The tea is ________ hot to drink.
   a) enough b) too c) as d) also
3. Don't eat too many sweets ________ you will have good health.
   a) to b) but c) so that d) because
4. How ________ water do you drink a day?
   a) many b) much c) often d) deep
5. If you ________ too hot in bed, open the window.
   a) feel b) feels c) feeling d) felt
6. Ahmed is tall enough to ________ basketball.
   a) played b) plays c) playing d) play
7. I can ________ you with your homework.
   a) help b) helps c) helped d) helping
8. Can you ________ some food for the party?
   a) make b) makes c) making d) made
9. Ali was ________ because he was late for dinner.
   a) exciting b) interesting c) happy d) annoyed
10. The book I am reading is really ________.
    a) excite b) exciting c) excited d) excitement
11. I won't ________ too much noise. The baby is sleeping.
    a) make b) makes c) made d) making
12. I have some old things, I'll ________ throw them away.
    a) help b) helps c) helping d) helped

Listening Texts

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Many sports are popular in my country, but the most popular sport is football. I play football with my friends on a team. The only problem is that the sun is very strong here in Cairo. So, I always put on sunscreen before I play a football match. For me, the best part about playing a team sport is when I make new friends. That's how I met my best friend, Fares. We met while we were playing football.

Lesson (2)

- Listen and answer the questions.

I'm Amira and I love having free time because I can do my favorite things. For example, my family and I enjoy spending time outside. My mom, dad and I love going hiking in themountains and the desert. We like going to the beach, too. I love going swimming, but my mom doesn't like swimming. She likes reading a book at the beach.

Lesson (4)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Amir loves traveling. He wants to do more. He wants to go to places which he's never been before. Fares is creative and makes lots of art. He paints and he draws. He shows us his heart. Noha loves nature. She hugs great big trees. She goes hiking and camping and talks to the bees.

Lesson (5)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Hapi lived in Ancient Egypt. He lived with his parents on a farm near the Nile. Every day, he helped his father look after his animals. After work, he and his sister Amunet helped his mother in the house. When they finished the housework, they sometimes played a board game called senet. It was a very popular game in Ancient Egypt.

Lesson (6)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Dear Charlotte,

Hello! I'm your new email friend. I'm ten years old and I live in Luxor. My first favorite hobby is birdwatching. My dad is a tour guide, and he takes people to see birds on the river. He's taught me all about the different birds. My other favorite hobby is photography.

Bye for now,

Sara

Lesson (7)

- Listen and answer the questions.

We went on a two-day camping trip to the desert. I took a map and a tent. My brother took sunscreen and food. My uncle put up the tent. My sister cooked our meals. We had a nice time there. We were very happy.

Activities on Unit (5)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Children in Ancient Egypt did lots of things in their free time. They enjoyed singing and dancing. They played musical instruments. They had lots of different toys to play with. They loved playing board games. The most popular board games were senet and mehen. Mehen was also called the snake game. Children loved swimming. They swam in the Nile.

Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Last week! I went to Alexandria with my parents. I live in a small village between Alexandria and Cairo, so it was exciting to visit a big city. These were some of my favorite places.

Lesson (2)

- Listen and answer the questions.

My favorite place is the sports center in our village. Everybody goes to the sports center on Thursday night. We meet all our friends, play sports, and have fun.

Lesson (3)

- Listen and answer the questions.

The Citadel of Qaitbay is a big square building with very thick walls. Almost everything is made of stone, and there are tall round towers in the corners of the building. It's a fort, and it was built to protect the city.

Nobody could go in it when the doors were closed!

Lesson (4)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Ahmed's family will soon renew their computer room at school. They will have modern computers. They will use the internet, too. Ahmed is very happy. The internet will help him do his homework and researches.

Lesson (5)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Younis was walking through the date palms near his home. It was hot and the sun was a bright yellow circle in the sky. Tall green grass and bushes grew next to the path to the lake. Younis saw his grandpa pulling his fishing boat out of the water. Grandpa showed Younis a bucket of thin silver fish.

Lesson (6)

- Listen and answer the questions.

We went to Aswan on vacation. It was a lot of fun! We got a trip on the Nile. It was an amazing view. We visited the High Dam. It makes electricity. At last we went to a restaurant for lunch. It was delicious.

Lesson (7)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Roberta, Phyllis, and Peter lived in a large house in London, England. One day their father had to leave them to work in another country. While father is away, they must leave London and move to a smaller house in the countryside. Their new house was near a railway.

Activities on Unit (6)

- Listen and answer the questions.

I'm Heba. I'm on vacation with my family in Dahab near the Red Sea. We always go camping in the summer. I love sleeping under the stars. I usually help my dad to put up the tent. The beaches are amazing. We go swimming in the sea every day. The water is so warm. The sun's really hot, though. You have to put on sunscreen so you don't burn your skin. We usually have a picnic on the beach.

Test On Review (3)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Last month, I started a new school. I didn't know anybody and I was nervous. But Everybody was friendly. I quickly made friends with students in my class and now I'm very happy at school.

Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Marwan lives by the sea. One evening, he went to bed at the usual time, but he could not sleep. He heard his mom go past his bedroom door and said, "Mom, I can't sleep! I'm wide awake!

Lesson (2)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Sleep is very important to everyone. Getting enough sleep helps heal your body from any pain or injuries. It is also important for your mind as well. Sleep affects your mood and helps you to refresh and work hard.

Lesson (3)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Everybody of your age should drink six to eight glasses of water a day. Try not to drink many sodas - they are not good for your heart or teeth. Everybody of your age should exercise for one hour per day - this can be playing with friends, going out on your bike, walking to school, or swimming.

Lesson (4)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Swimming is very important to all of us. We should practise it every week. Swimming builds your body and makes you fit and strong. It can also improve health for people with heart diseases. It's dangerous to jump in water that is not deep because you may hurt your foot.

Lesson (5)

- Listen and answer the questions.

My uncle is a fisherman and he lives near the sea. When we visit him, we like to go walking along the coast because it's beautiful. Last time we went to see him, we went for a walk late in the afternoon. Then I heard someone shouting from the beach below us.

Lesson (6)

- Listen and answer the questions.

A leaflet is a written work or composition that has been published. To make a good leaflet use heading

with different sizes and styles of writing. To make the leaflet look interesting, use main heading and sub-heading. You can find leaflets in museums, libraries and sports centers. We make leaflets to give information. Really they are very important.

Lesson (7)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Canute was a famous king and he was called the Great. He was a power in the politics of Europe in the 11th century, respected by emperors and people. He brought together English and Danish Kingdoms and wanted to be treated like a normal man. He was really a good king.

Activities on Unit (7)

- Listen and answer the questions.

My uncle is a fisherman and he lives near the sea. When we visit him, we like to go walking along the coast because it's beautiful. He heard someone shouting from the beach below us. There was a man in danger because of the tides and the gravity of Earth. My uncle rushed and managed to save him.

Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and answer the questions.

We all live in a community and we should all help the people who live in it. I wanted to be a volunteer to help my community. It's a great way to help your community. You can learn new skills, make new friends, and make your neighborhood a better place. We spoke to people in our neighborhood about different ways people can make our community stronger.

Lesson (2)

- Listen and answer the questions.

My name is Magdy. My father is painting the library today. The rainwater damaged it. He needs to move lots of books before he starts. He asked me to help him. I said to him that I would come at 10 o'clock after basketball practice to come and help him.

Lesson (3)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Gardens are very important. All people like gardens. We have a community garden in our area where people can relax and be quiet. Flowers, plants and trees will make the garden a cool place.

Lesson (4)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Reem and Talia were playing on the beach with their parents. Suddenly, Reem saw something strange in the sea. "Look, Talia. Is that a ball?" The two girls walked slowly to the strange object. It looked like a fishing net, but they could also see a small head, and something hard. It was a shell! "It's a turtle!" said Talia "It's stuck in the net.

Lesson (5)

- Listen and answer the questions.

The senses of nocturnal animals have developed differently to diurnal animals. They have adapted to work when it is dark. For example, owls have large eyes that help them to see in the dark. Nocturnal animals also have a very good sense of hearing.

Lesson (6)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Light pollution: Did you know that humans make more artificial light now than at any time in the past? Cities are getting bigger and stores, houses and traffic all make light. We wanted to find out what happens to the natural world when there is a lot of artificial light.

Lesson (7)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Speely Sparrow was asleep. It was dark and quiet. Then a noise woke him up. Boomy Blackbird was singing loudly. The singing was annoying. Speely said, "Please be quiet.

Activities on Unit (8)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Every year, we have more visitors who come on vacation to enjoy the beaches and the beautiful clear blue water. But when we have more visitors, we have more problems for our marine animals. There are more boats, more water sports, more garbage, and more lights at night from buildings and hotels. All of this is bad for turtles and other marine animals.

AL-BAHER

CONNECT PLUS

Final Revision



5th 2025
Primary
Second Term

GRANDDAD'S VILLAGE

قرية جدّي

BY NICOLA GARDNER
ILLUSTRATED BY MATT WARD

The Characters


Fares's Grandpa


Waleed's dad


Waleed's mom


Fares


Waleed


Mrs Amira


Fares's Dad


Fares's Mom


The woman in the village

Help your child identify the characters of the story. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على شخصيات القصة.





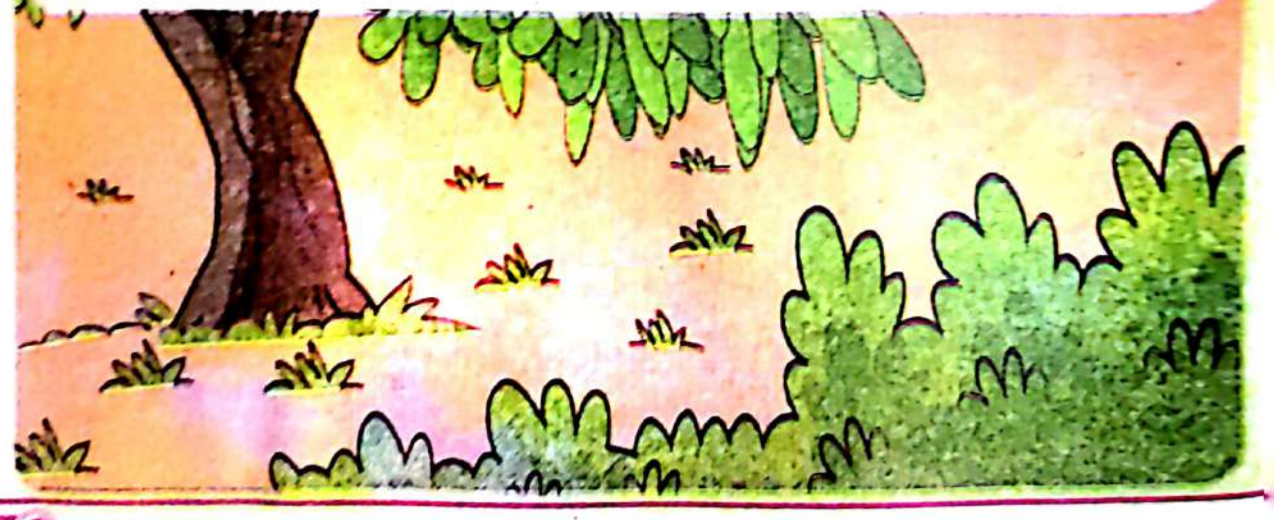
The Plot

Fares lived in Alexandria with his parents and Granddad. He loved talking to Granddad about his life when he was younger. One day, a new boy called Waleed moved into the same building and they quickly became friends. Waleed's family were from the same village as Fares's granddad, so when Waleed's family went to the village, they asked Fares to go with them. Fares visited the village and he took photos of all the important places in Granddad's earlier life to make a lovely photo album for him.

عاش فارس مع والديه وجده وأحب التحدث مع جده عن حياته عندما كان صغيرا. وفي أحد الأيام انتقل ولد يدعى وليد إلى نفس المبنى الذي يعيش فيه فارس وسرعان ما أصبحا صديقين. كانت أسرة وليد من نفس قرية جد فارس، لذلك عندما ذهبت أسرة وليد إلى القرية طلبوا من فارس الذهاب معهم. زار فارس القرية والتقط صورا لكل الأماكن في حياة الجد السابقة وكون ألبوما جميلا (لصور الجد).

What two lessons can you learn from the story?

1. It's important to go on trips.
2. It's important to look after and respect older people.



PICTURE DICTIONARY

chat



Grandma and I chatted a lot yesterday. It was great talking to her.

decorate



We had fun decorating the house.

fig tree



We have a fig tree at the back of our garden.

photo album



My grandparents keep all their old photographs in a photo album.

proud



Hassan was proud that he and his dad made a train track.

wheelchair



Nabila uses a wheelchair because she can't walk.



Granddad's memories

Fares lived in Alexandria with his parents and his granddad. When Fares wanted advice, he talked to Granddad to ask for his opinion, because he always had very helpful things to say. Granddad always had stories to tell, too, and liked to tell Fares about his life when he was a child.

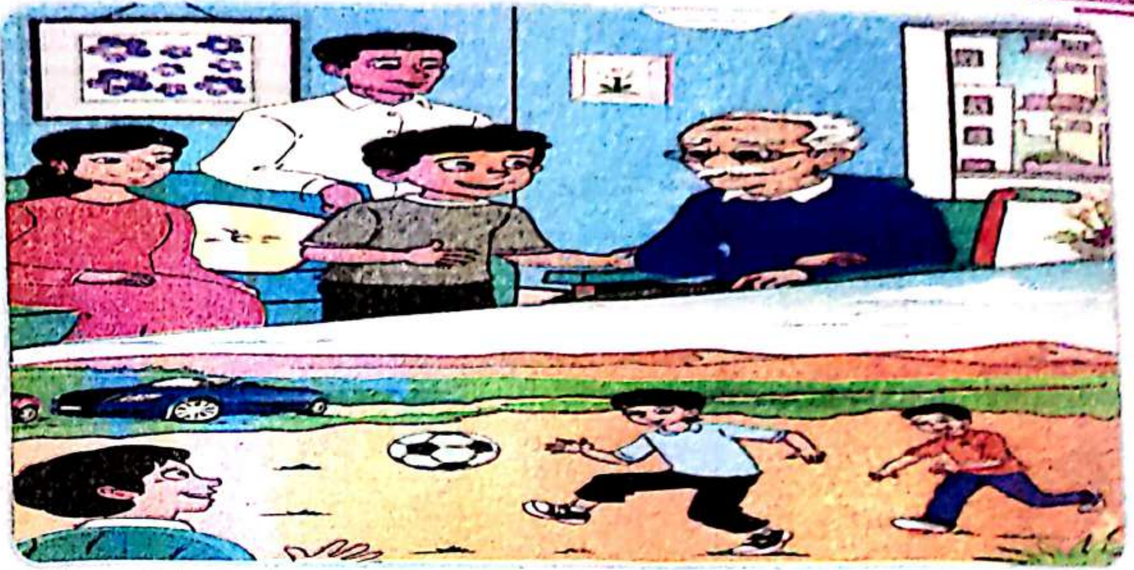
عاش فارس في الإسكندرية مع والديه وجدّه. كلما أراد فارس نصيحة تحدث مع جده ليسأله عن رأيه، فالجد كان لديه أشياء مفيدة جدًا ليقولها. وكان لديه دائمًا قصص ليحكيها أيضًا وأحبَّ أن يخبر فارس عن حياته عندما كان طفلًا.



Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

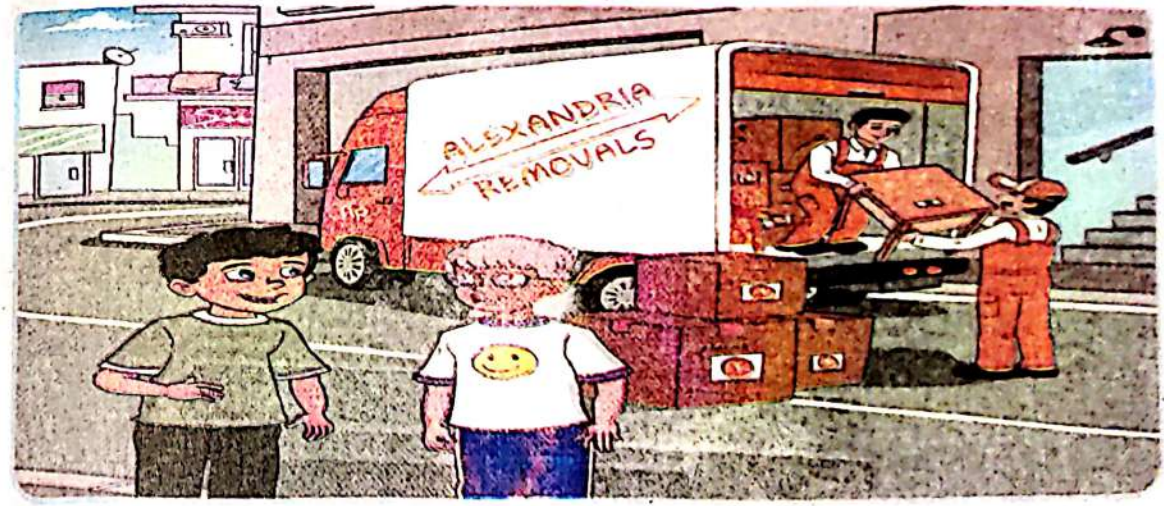


The Story - Granddad's village



"What did you do when you were a boy, Granddad?" asked Fares.
Granddad said, "I studied hard, then I played football in a park with all my friends. It was a very good life for a young person."

سأل فارس الجد: "ماذا كنت تفعل عندما كنت صبيًا يا جدي؟". قال الجد: "كنت أذاكر بجد، ثم ألعب كرة القدم في الحديقة مع كل أصدقائي. كانت حياة رائعة جدًا بالنسبة لشاب صغير."



One day, Fares saw a new family moving into his building. There was a boy about the same age as him.
"Hi," said Fares, "I'm Fares. Welcome to the building!"
"I'm Waleed," said the boy. "We moved here from Cairo because my dad has a new job." "Oh, cool!" said Fares. Soon, Fares and Waleed became good friends.

وفي أحد الأيام رأي فارس أسرة جديدة تنتقل إلى المبنى الذي يعيش فيه. وكان هناك ولدًا تقريبًا في نفس عمره. قال فارس: " مرحبًا، أنا فارس مرحبًا بقدومك إلى هذا المبنى." ردّ الولد قائلًا: "أنا وليد.". انتقلنا إلى هنا من القاهرة لأن والدي لديه وظيفة جديدة." قال فارس آوه رائع" وسرعان ما أصبح فارس ووليد صديقين جيدين".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفلك ان يقرا و يتابع احداث القصة.



One day, Waleed visited Fares with his mom and dad.

Waleed's mom asked Granddad, "Where did you live before?" "I'm from a small village," said Granddad, and he told her the name. She was amazed, because her family was from the same village!

"Have you seen the new supermarket?" she asked.

"No, I haven't been to my village for over ten years."

وفي أحد الأيام زار وليد فارس مع أمه وأبيه. سألت أم وليد الجد: "أين عشت قبل ذلك؟" قال الجد: "أنا من قرية صغيرة وأخبرها عن اسم القرية. كانت الأم مندهشة لأن أسرتها من نفس القرية!" وسألته: "هل رأيت السوبر ماركت الجديد؟" قال الجد: "لا، فأنا لم أذهب إلى قريتي لما يزيد عن عشر سنين.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

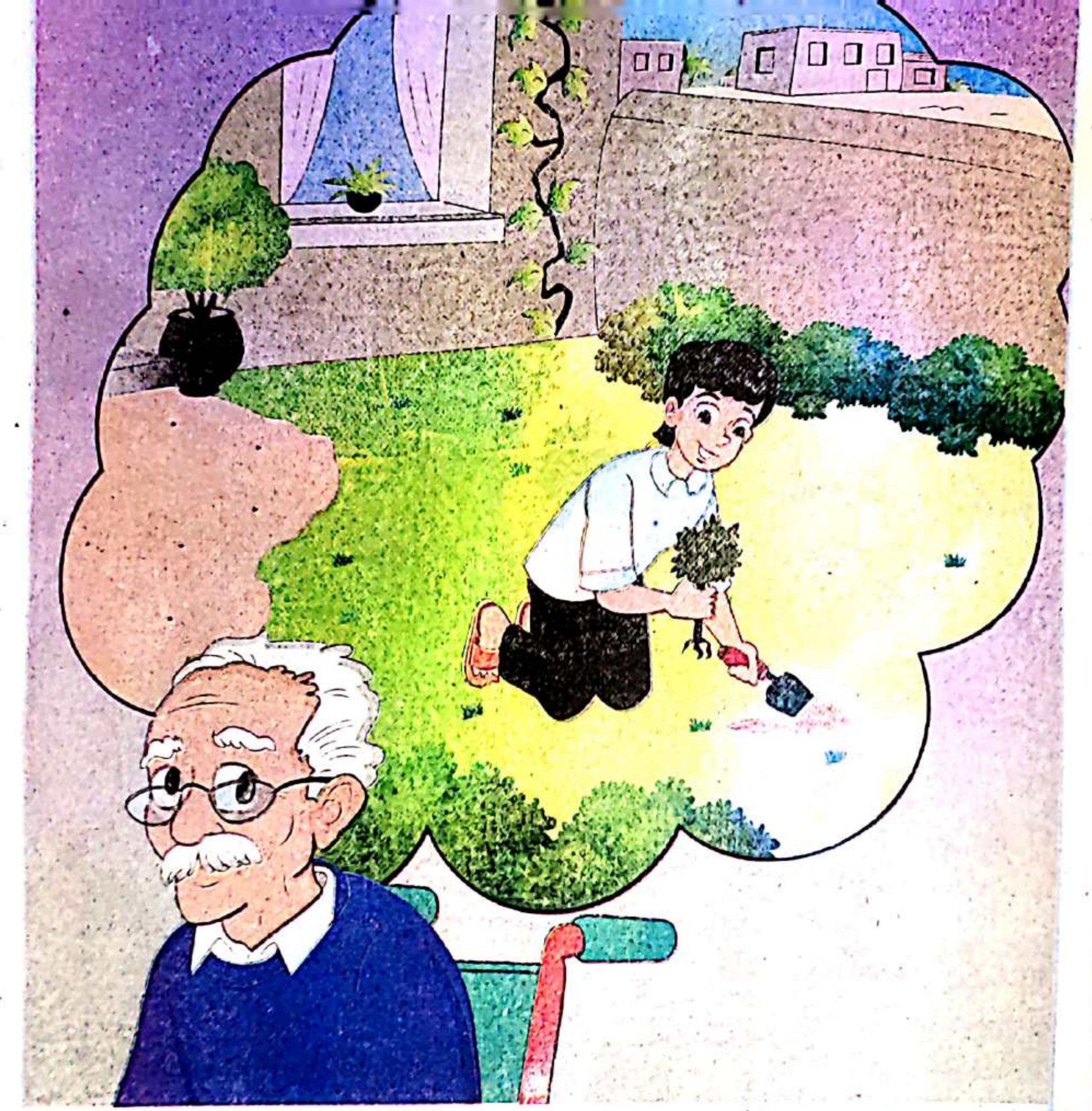


The Story - Granddad's village

"Do you think the village has changed?" asked Waleed's mom.
"I don't know," Granddad said. "I used to go to the theater a lot. We loved it, but it might not be there now. Today, everyone watches television or uses the internet. It was very different then. Even schools have changed."
"You were a teacher, weren't you?" asked Waleed.
"Yes," Granddad replied. "It was exciting teaching all those young people, and some of them went to university because they studied hard."

سألت أم وليد الجد: "هل تعتقد أن القرية تغيرت؟" قال الجد: "أنا لا أعرف، اعتدت أن أذهب إلى المسرح كثيرًا. لقد أحببناه، لكن ربما لم يعد له وجود هناك الآن . فاليوم يشاهد الجميع التلفاز أو يستخدم الأنترنت. كان الأمر مختلف وقتها. حتى المدارس تغيرت." سأل وليد الجد: "كنت معلمًا، أليس كذلك؟" ردَّ الجد: "نعم، كان شيئًا مثيرًا تعليم كل هؤلاء الشباب، فبعضهم التحق بالجامعة لأنهم ذاكروا بجد."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



"What other things do you remember about your village, Granddad?" asked Fares.

"Well, I remember my old house. I planted some trees in the garden when I was a little boy. They were growing well when I moved from the house. But are they still there or were they cut down? I don't know."

"Which was your favorite tree?" asked Fares.

"The fig tree," replied Granddad.

سأل فارس الجد: "ما الأشياء الأخرى التي تتذكرها عن القرية يا جدي؟" قال الجد: "حسنا أنا أتذكر منزلي القديم، قمت بزراعة بعض الأشجار في الحديقة عندما كنت ولدا صغيرا. كانت الأشجار تنمو بشكل جيد عندما انتقلت من المنزل. لكن هل ما زالت الأشجار موجودة، أم قطعت؟، أنا لا اعرف." سأله فارس: " وأي شجرة كانت المفضلة لديك؟" قال الجد: " شجرة التين".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفلك ان يقرا و يتابع احداث القصة.

The Story - Granddad's village

"Next week, we're traveling to our village to see our family. Would Fares and his granddad like to come?" said Waleed's mom.

Granddad said, "I'm sorry, but it is very difficult for me to travel because I am in a wheelchair. But I'm sure Fares would like to go with you."

Fares was very excited.

قالت أم وليد: "في الأسبوع القادم، سنسافر إلى قريتنا لنرى عائلتنا. هل يود فارس وجده أن يأتوا معنا". قال الجد: "أنا آسف، الأمر صعب جدًا أن أسافر لأني استخدم كرسي متحرك، لكنني متأكد من أن فارس يود أن يذهب معكم. فارس كان متحمس جدًا.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Fares lived in Aswan with his parents and granddad.
2. Fares liked chatting to his granddad about his life when he was younger.
3. Granddad studied hard when he was young.
4. Fares made a new friend with Waleed.
5. Fares moved from Cairo because his mom had a new job.
6. Waleed visited Fares with his mom and dad.
7. Granddad hasn't visited his village for 20 years.
8. Granddad used to go to the theater a lot.
9. Granddad was a doctor.
10. Granddad planted a fig tree in the garden of his house.
11. It's easy for Granddad to travel on the wheelchair.
12. Fares went on a trip to see Granddad's village.
13. Granddad could go on the trip.
14. It's very difficult for Granddad to travel because he was in a wheelchair.
15. Waleed is Fares's new friend.

2 Complete the following sentences.

1. ______________ loved chatting to Granddad.
2. ______________ studied hard and played football with his friends.
3. Fares lived in ______________ with his parents and his granddad.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

4. Granddad studied hard and played ______ in a park with all his friends.
5. Fares made a new ______________________ called Waleed.
6. Waleed moved from Cairo because his dad has a new __________.
7. Waleed's mom and dad went with Waleed to have __________ with Fares and his family.
8. Granddad used to go to the ______________________ a lot.
9. Granddad said schools here ______________________.
10. When Granddad was a boy, he planted some ________ in his garden.

3 Answer the following questions.

1. Where did Fares live?

____

2. How was Granddad's life? .

____

3. Why did Waleed move to Alexandria from Cairo?

____

4. Who visited Fares and his family?

____

5. Where did Granddad use to go a lot?

____

6. What did Granddad plant in his garden?

____

7. Why was it difficult for Granddad to travel?

____

Fares's Trip

Although Granddad couldn't go on the trip, he was very excited for Fares.
"Fares, you must go to all my favorite places when you visit my village.
Can you see if the theater and the school where I worked are still there?
And find the park, too."

"Yes, Granddad," said Fares.

على الرغم من أن الجد لن يستطيع الذهاب في هذه الرحلة، لكن كان سعيدًا من أجل فارس. قال الجد لفارس: "يا فارس، يجب أن تذهب إلى كل أماكني المفضلة عندما تزور قريتي. وهل يمكنك رؤية المسرح والمدرسة التي عملتُ بها، هل ما زالت موجودة هناك؟ واعثر على الحديقة أيضًا." قال فارس: "حسنًا يا جدي."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Fares traveled with Waleed's family by train. It was a long but beautiful journey.
Fares was sad that Granddad couldn't come on the journey, but he was very interested to see Granddad's village.

سافر فارس مع أسرة وليد بالقطار. كانت الرحلة طويلة لكنها جميلة. كان فارس حزينًا لأن الجد لم يستطع الذهاب في هذه الرحلة لكنه كان مهتمًا جدًا لرؤية قرية الجد.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.





The next day, Waleed and his dad showed Fares around Granddad's village. Waleed's dad said, "This is the school where your granddad worked as a teacher."

"I'm very proud to think Granddad taught here, and helped the young people," said Fares. "Is the theater still here? And where is the park?"

"Hmm," said Waleed's dad. "I don't know, but let's ask someone from the village."

وفي اليوم التالي أخذ وليد ووالده فارس في جولة حول قرية الجد. قال والد وليد "هذه هي المدرسة حيث كان يعمل جدك بها كمدرس" قال فارس: "أنا فخور جدًا أن جدي درّس هنا وساعد الصغار". هل مازال المسرح هنا؟ وأين الحديقة؟" قال والد وليد: "أنا لا أعرف، لكن هيّا نسأل شخص ما من القرية."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



The Story - Granddad's village

Soon, they saw a woman by the road.

"Excuse me," said Fares, "do you know where the park is?"

"It was here," she said, pointing to some new houses. "But they built these houses last year."

"What about the old theater? Is that near here?" asked Fares.

"The theater's across the road," said the woman. "They wanted to close it, but the villagers at the school kept it open for our children and grandchildren."

Fares was very happy that the people of the village still wanted the theater.

وبعد قليل رأوا سيدة في الطريق. قال فارس: "عذرًا، هل تعرفين مكان الحديقة؟ قالت السيدة: "إنها كانت هنا، وهي تشير إلى بعض المنازل الجديدة، لكنهم بنوا هذه المنازل العام الماضي." سألها فارس: "وماذا عن المسرح القديم، هل هو قريب من هنا؟" قالت السيدة: "أن المسرح في الجهة المقابلة لهذا الطريق. أرادوا غلقه لكن أهل القرية في المدرسة حافظوا عليه مفتوحًا لأطفالنا وأحفادنا. "كان فارس سعيدًا أن الناس في القرية ما زالوا يريدون المسرح."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Then Fares had an idea.

"Let's go to the house where Granddad used to live! I have the address."

Fares and Waleed walked through the village and to the house, where they saw a woman working in the garden.

"Hello!" said the woman.

"Hello. My name's Fares. My granddad used to live in this house when he was younger. Now he lives with me in Alexandria."

"It's nice to meet you," said the woman. "My name's Mrs Amira.

Would you like to see the house?"

"Yes, please!" said Fares.

ثم خطرت ببال فارس فكرة، وقال: "هيًا نذهب إلى المنزل حيث عاش جدّي، فلديّ العنوان." مشى فارس ووليد في القرية إلى أن وصلا للمنزل حيث رأوا سيدة تعمل في الحديقة. قالت السيدة "مرحبًا" قال فارس "مرحبًا، وقال أسمي فارس وأخبرها بأن جده عاش هنا عندما كان صغيرًا ولكنه الآن يعيش معه في الإسكندرية، قالت السيدة" شيء لطيف أن أقابلك، أسمي أميرة، هل تود أن ترى المنزل؟ قال فارس: "نعم من فضلك".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع احداث القصة.



Mrs Amira chatted to the boys and showed them all the rooms in the house.
"I love this house!" said Fares.
Mrs Amira said, "We didn't decorate it because we loved it when we moved in, so we didn't change anything."

تحدثت السيدة أميرة مع الأولاد ,أرتهم جميع الحجرات في المنزل. قال فارس: "أحب هذا المنزل." قالت السيدة أميرة: "لم نزين المنزل لأننا أحببناه عندما انتقلنا إليه، لذلك لم نغير أي شيء."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

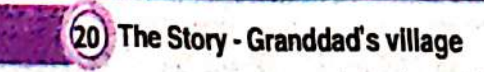
"My granddad planted some small trees in your garden when he was a little boy," said Fares. "Can I see them?"

"Did he plant a fig tree?" asked Mrs Amira. "That's my favorite tree. We get lots of delicious fruit from it every year."

They went outside to see the fantastic fig tree.

"Wow!" said Waleed, "that's a cool tree!" Fares felt proud of his granddad's work.

قال فارس: "زرع جدي بعض الأشجار الصغيرة في حديقتك عندما كان طفلًا صغيرًا ، هل يمكنني رؤيتها؟ سألته السيدة: "هل زرع شجرة تين؟" أنها الشجرة المفضلة لدى، فنحن نحصل على الفاكهة اللذيذة منها كل عام." ثم خرجوا ليروا شجرة التين الرائعة." قال وليد مندهشًا: "واو! إنها شجرة رائعة." شعر فارس بالفخر لعمل جده."



Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Fares went on a trip to see Granddad's village. ( )
2. Fares met some people who knew Granddad when he was a boy. ( )
3. Fares and Waleed visited the house where Granddad used to live. ( )
4. Fares traveled with Waleed's family by plane. ( )
5. Fares wasn't interested to see Granddad's village. ( )
6. Waleed and his dad showed Fares around Granddad's village. ( )
7. They built new houses instead of the theater. ( )
8. Fares wouldn't like the house where his Granddad live. ( )
9. Mrs Amira showed the boys all the rooms in the house. ( )
10. Amira decorated the house because she didn't love it. ( )
11. Granddad's favorite tree was a fig tree. ( )
12. The villagers kept the theater open for their children and grandchildren. ( )
13. Fares was proud of his Granddad. ( )
14. Fares was happy that Granddad couldn't come on the journey. ( )
15. Waleed and Fares saw the school where Granddad used to teach. ( )

2 Complete the following sentences.

1. Fares traveled to Granddad's __________with Waleed and his family.
2. They saw the houses where________________________used to be.
3. Waleed and Fares saw the ______ where Granddad used to teach in.
4. Waleed and Fares visited the house where ___________ used to live.
5. Fares felt ____________________ when he saw Granddad's fig tree.
6. Although Granddad couldn't go on the trip, he was very _____for Fares.
7. Fares was very interested to see Granddad's ____________________.
8. Mrs Amira ________________ to the boys and showed them all the rooms in the house.
9. Mrs Amira didn't _______________ the house because she loved it.
10. Granddad planted some small __________________ in his garden.

3 Answer the following questions.

1. Where did Fares and Waleed's family go on a trip?

____

2. Which three places did Granddad ask Fares to look for?

____

3. What places did Mrs Amira show Waleed and Fares?

____

4. What did Fares see in the garden?

____

5. Why didn't Mrs Amira decorate the house?

____

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

The End

Fares is proud of his family history.

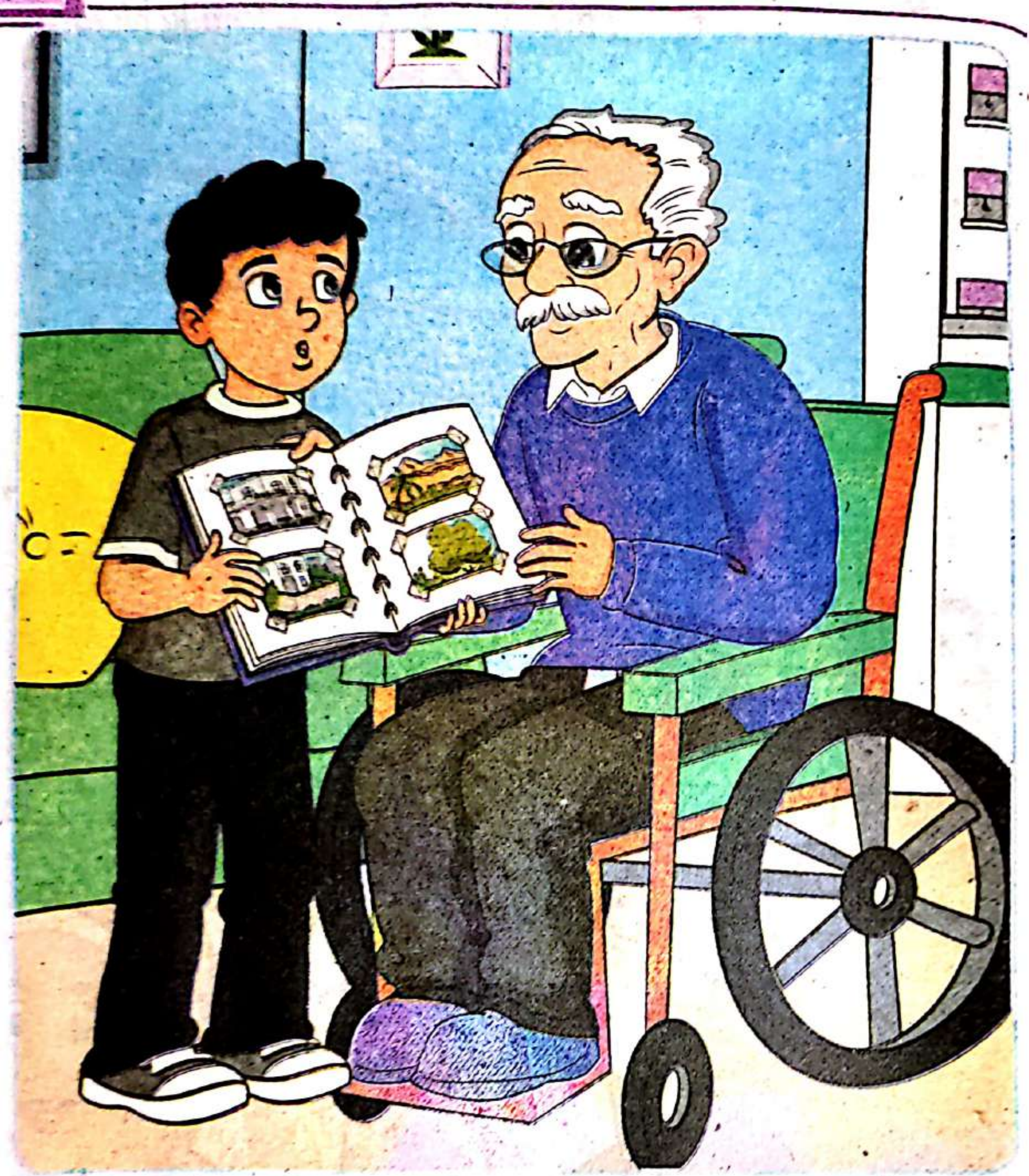
On the train back to Alexandria, Waleed's mom asked, "Did you enjoy the trip to the village, Fares?"

"Oh, yes," said Fares, "I learned a lot about Granddad when he was younger. Thank you so much for inviting me on this trip."

"You are very welcome," said Waleed's mom.

سألت أم وليد فارس وهم في طريق العودة إلى الإسكندرية على متن القطار: "هل استمتعت بالرحلة إلى القرية يا فارس؟" قال فارس: "آوه، نعم لقد عرفت الكثير عن جدي عندما كان صغيرًا. شكرًا جزيلًا لكم لدعوتي لهذه الرحلة." قالت أم وليد: "على الرحب والسعة."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



When he got home. Fares told his family about his trip.

"Granddad, I have a present for you," he said.

Fares gave Granddad a beautiful photo album. It showed all the places Fares visited in the village: the school, the theater, and Granddad's old house and garden. Granddad was very pleased to hear about all the buildings.

عندما عاد فارس للمنزل أخبر أسرته عن رحلته وقال: "جدي، لدي هدية لك." أعطى فارس جده ألبوم صور مليء بصور لجميع الأماكن التي زارها فارس في القرية: المدرسة، والمسرح، ومنزل الجد القديم والحديقة. كان الجد سعيدًا جدًا لسماعه عن كل تلك المباني.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفلك ان يقرا و يتابع احداث القصة.

"What did you learn on your trip?" asked Fares's mom."
"I learned a lot of things," said Fares. "For example, it's important to learn about your family when they were younger, so that you can understand your family history. And it was great to learn about your life when you were younger, Granddad. You are so important to us."
"Thank you, Fares!" said Granddad.
"And I am very proud you have learned so much, Fares!" said Fares's dad.

سألت الأم فارس: "ماذا تعلمت من رحلتك؟" قال فارس "تعلمت الكثير من الأشياء. على سبيل المثال، من المهم أن تعرف عن عائلتك عندما كانوا أصغر سنًا، لذلك يمكنك أن تفهم تاريخ عائلتك. وأيضا كان رائعا أن أعرف عن حياتك عندما كنت صغيرًا يا جدي. فأنت هام جدًا بالنسبة لنا." قال الجد: "أشكرك يا فارس." وقال والد فارس: "وأنا فخور جدًا أنك تعلمت الكثير يا فارس!".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Fares recorded a video about his trip to Granddad's village. ( )
2. Fares learned a lot about life of his family history on his trip. ( )
3. Fares didn't learn anything from his trip. ( )
4. Fares gave Granddad a photo album with lots of photos of his village. ( )
5. It's important to learn about your family when they were younger. ( )

2 Complete the following sentences.

1. ____________ was proud that Fares learned a lot from his visit.
2. Fares gave Granddad a photo ____________.
3. It's important to learn about your ________ when they were younger.
4. Granddad was very ____________ to hear about all the buildings.

3 Answer the following questions.

1. Who was proud of Fares?

____

2. What did Fares give Granddad?

____

3. What did Fares learn from his trip?

____

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (5) Hobbies and free-time activities

Vocabulary

- Free-time activities and collocations:

have a picnic	يتنزه في الهواء الطلق	go camping	يذهب للتخييم
make new friends	يكوّن صداقات جديدة	go hiking	يذهب للتنزه
play sports	يلعب رياضات	put up a tent	ينصب خيمة
record a video	يسجل فيديو		
do arts and crafts			يمارس الفنون والحرف اليدوية
put on sunscreen			يضع كريم واقي من الشمس

- Free-time activities in Ancient Egypt:

archery	الرماية	boxing	الملاكمة
chariot race	سباق عربات حربية	board game	لعبة لوحية
fishing	صيد الأسماك	hunting	الصيد
wrestling	المصارعة	snake game	لعبة السلم والثعبان

Adjectives

gorgeous	خلاب - فاتن	cool	رائع
awesome	مذهل	beautiful	جميل
interesting	شيق - مثير للاهتمام	amazing	مذهل - مدهش

Extra Vocabulary

campfire	نار المخيم	campsite	مخيم
drop a pin on a map	يسقط دبوس على الخريطة	tour guide	مرشد سياحي
picnic table	مائدة الطعام "النزهة"	trail	ممر / طريق
(phone) reception	إشارة استقبال الهاتف	backpack	حقيبة الظهر

Help your child revise unit (5).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الخامسة.





verb + ing

Subject (فاعل) + (like / love / enjoy hate / don't like / dislike) + verb (فعل) + ing

⇨ I like spending time outside.

Spelling rules

If a verb ends in a (consonant + e), we take away the (e) and add (-ing).

have ⇨ having   take ⇨ taking   dance ⇨ dancing

If a verb ends in a (a vowel then a consonant), we write the last letter twice and add (-ing).

put ⇨ putting   swim ⇨ swimming

Yes / No question with present simple

(Do / Does) + subject + inf. ...?

⇨ Do you like cooking?   - Yes, I do.   - No, I don't.

⇨ Does Reem enjoy swimming?   -Yes, she does.   - No, she doesn't.

Wh- question with present simple

Q.W + (do / does) + subject + inf. ...?

⇨ What hobby do you enjoy doing most?
I enjoy swimming most.

⇨ What does he like doing in his free time?
He likes playing football.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When did Sameer write a letter to his friend?

   ....

2. Where did Jack live?

   ....

3. Where did Sameer find Jack's address?

   ....

4. How old is Sameer?

   ....

Listen and answer the questions.

1. Why does Amira love having free time?

   ....

2. Where do the family love going hiking?

   ....

3. What does mom do at the beach?

   ....

4. Who do they send the video to?

   ....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

modern - house - senet - Nile - father

Hapi lived in Ancient Egypt. He lived with his parents on a farm near the 1).......................... . Every day, he helped his 2).......................... look after his animals. After work, he and his sister, Amuent helped his mother in the 3).......................... . When they finished, they played 4).......................... .



Read and complete the text with words from the box.

gorgeous - birdwatching - Luxor - email - tour guide

I'm Sara. I'm ten years old. I live in 1)...................... in the south of Egypt. My favorite hobby is 2)............................... My dad is a 3)......................., and he takes people to see birds on the river. There are so many 4)................................ birds.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Tom Adam went to the Red Sea last summer. He flew with his parents and his sister. The Adams stayed there for a week. They visited lots of places and heard lots of music. The children loved the music, so their father took them to a music shop and bought some cassettes. They saw lots of different fish. Some were big and some were very small. They were beautiful coloured. The Adams had a wonderful holiday at the Red Sea. They want to go again soon.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Tom went to the Red Sea by ....

   a) boat b) train c) plane d) taxi

2. The underlined word "beautiful" is the opposite of ....

   a) well b) ugly c) good d) nice

B) Answer the following questions.

3. When did Tom go to the Red Sea?

....

4. How long did they stay there?

....



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.





Read the following text and answer the questions.

Most people like to spend their holiday in the country to enjoy the fresh air. Some people like to go to the seaside and spend their time playing on the beach, swimming, fishing or sailing boats. Others go to the club where they meet friends, do exercise and play sports. A few people stay at home to rest, read and watch TV. If the holiday is long enough and they can afford it, many people like to travel abroad.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... people like to stay at home to rest.
   a) Many b) A few c) A lot of d) Little
2. Other people like to go to the ...... to meet their friends and do exercise.
   a) movie theater b) beach c) cinema d) club

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why do many people like to spend their holiday in the country?

....

4. How do people spend their time on the beach?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mom doesn't like ....
   a) swim b) swims c) swimming d) swam
2. I enjoy .... time outside.
   a) spending b) spend c) spent d) spends
3. There are lots of .... in a rainforest.
   a) rivers b) sand c) beaches d) trees
4. I don't like .... chocolate on my ice cream.
   a) put b) puts c) has put d) putting
5. Talia likes .... sports after school.
   a) play b) plays c) playing d) played



6. Hany hates .... arts and crafts.
   a) do b) doing c) does d) did
7. Younis .... chocolate on his ice cream.
   a) don't like b) like c) doesn't like d) love
8. .... you like watching TV?
   a) Do b) Does c) Doing d) Are
9. What hobby do you enjoy .... most?
   a) does b) doing c) did d) done
10. Football is the .... popular activity.
   a) more b) less c) little d) most
11. Swimming is .... popular than doing creative hobbies.
   a) more b) most c) the least d) little
12. Listening to music is .... popular than playing computer games.
   a) the most b) little c) less d) the least
13. I really enjoy .... movies.
   a) watches b) watching c) watch d) watched
14. Football is .... popular than painting.
   a) more b) little c) least d) most
15. Computer games are .... popular games.
   a) more b) less c) the most d) little
16. Which sport do you think is the .... exciting?
   a) more b) most c) less d) many
17. He remembers to put .... sunscreen before he plays a football game.
   a) in b) on c) up d) at
18. Saleem puts .... the tent.
   a) up b) in c) at d) on
19. He likes to .... hiking in the summer.
   a) go b) put c) have d) do

5 Put the words in the correct orders to make sentences.

1. What - like - do - the children - activities - ?

....

2. likes - Japan - from - a craft - Daniel - .

....

3. love - They - adventure - our - seeing - .

....

4. after - playing - Talia - likes - sports - school - .

....

5. a tent - I - up - don't - putting - like - .

....

6. is - activity - popular - most - the - Swimming - .

....

7. sports - do - What - you - doing - like - ?

....

8. birdwatching - hobby - My - favorite - is - .

....

9. you - Do - like - poems - reading - ?

....



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Hobbies and activities

Guiding elements:

(swimming - playing football - free time - hiking)



Write an email of FIFTY (50) words.

to your friend Sara about "A camping trip to the desert"
Your name is Toka. Your email address is Toka@yahoo.com.
Your friend's email address is Sara@yahoo.com.

Unit (6) My wonderful city

Vocabulary

planetarium	مبنى القبة السماوية	harbor	مرفأ - ميناء	university	جامعة
aquarium	معرض الأحياء المائية	display	عرض	tram	ترام
bike paths	مسارات الدراجات	ruins	أطلال	fort	حصن
shopping mall	مركز تجاري	rooftop	قمة السطح	fountain	نافورة
architect	مهندس معماري	bright	لامعة - ساطعة	bushes	شجيرات
date palms	أشجار النخيل	bucket	دلو	curved	منحني
glad	سعيد	fossils	حفريات	wave	يلوح بيديه
snorkeling	الغطس بقناع وأنبوب تنفس	loudly	بصوتٍ عالٍ	frightened	خائف

Amazing Buildings

Burj Khalifa	برج خليفة (دبي بالإمارات)
Sydney Opera House	دار أوبرا سيدني (استراليا)
Iconic Tower	البرج الأيقوني (مصر)
the New Administrative Capital	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة (مصر)
the Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري (مصر)
the Leaning Tower of Pisa	برج بيزا المائل (إيطاليا)
Karnak Temple	معبد الكرنك (مصر)
the Guggenheim Museum	متحف جوجنهايم (أسبانيا)
the Al-Dar Headquarters	مقر الدار (أبو ظبي بالإمارات)
the Roman amphitheater	المسرح الروماني المدرج (مصر)
the Citadel of Qaitbay	قلعة قايتباي (مصر)
the Grand Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري الكبير (مصر)

Help your child revise unit (6).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السادسة.

Indefinite Pronouns

الضمائر الغير محددة

For people		For things	
everybody	كل شخص - الجميع	everything	كل شيء
somebody	شخصٌ ما	something	شيءٌ ما
anybody	أي شخص	anything	أي شيء
nobody	لاأحد	nothing	لاشيء

نستخدم (somebody) و(something) للتحدث عن أشياء أو أشخاص بشكل عام. (في الجمل المثبتة).

e.g. There's somebody at the door.

e.g. There's something on the table for you.

نستخدم (everything) و(everybody) للتحدث عن كل الأشخاص أو كل الأشياء. (في الجمل المثبتة).

e.g. She is polite, so everybody likes her.

e.g. Everything in this shop is made of wood.

نستخدم (nothing) و(nobody) للتحدث عن عدم وجود أشياء أو أشخاص بشكل عام. (لاحظ أن الفعل هنا مثبت لوجود النفي في الكلمتين).

e.g. I have nothing to eat.

e.g. I saw nobody in the library.

نستخدم (anything) أو(anybody) في النفي والاستفهام.

e.g. Do you have anything in your bag?

No, I don't have anything in my bag.

e.g. Did you see anybody in the classroom?

No, I didn't see anybody in the classroom.

Infinitive of purpose

التعبير عن الغرض باستخدام مصدر الفعل

to (لكي) **+ inf.** (المصدر)

نستخدم (to + inf) لبيان الغرض وهي إجابة عن سؤال بأداة الاستفهام "Why".

e.g. Why do you go to school?

e.g. I go to school to learn.

e.g. People will visit the shopping mall to go shopping.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where did you go last month?

   ____

2. Where do you live?

   ____

3. What did you buy?

   ____

4. How did you come back?

   ____

Listen and answer the questions.

1. What do you really like?

   ____

2. How is the zoo?

   ____

3. Which animal did you like best?

   ____

4. What did you feed the monkeys?

   ____

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

garbage - something - zoo - Park - everything

I'm Ali. I love going to Al-Azhar 1)........................ on the weekend. I meet my friends there, and we play. It's a beautiful place and 2).............................. in the park is clean. Nobody leaves 3)......................... or drop litter. There's always 4)______________ to see or do. My family loves the park, too.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

sell - expensive - cakes - delicious - buy

Samir : Look at this new bakery, Karim?

Karim : Oh! It's nice. Can we buy some 1)..?

Samir : Yes, we really need some.

Karim : But some people say cakes are 2)..

Samir : You are right. But they are very 3)..

Karim : OK. Let's 4).. some.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Bedouins keep beautiful birds called falcons. Falcons are predators. They can see very well, so they can find prey from long distance. Bedounis teach falcons to find rabbits for them to eat. Bedounis live in the desert. They use the sun to find east and west. The sand dunes show them which direction is south. They also look at the shape of sand dunes. If the wind is coming from the east, the sand dunes will go from north to south. Bedounis have lots of traditions, too. They say long poems at weddings, parties, and festivals. They also say short poems while they are traveling.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Falcons are a kind of ....

   a) birds b) fruits c) insects d) rabbits

2. The pronoun word "They" refers to ....

   a) falcons b) Bedouins c) predators d) rabbits.

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did Bedouins teach falcons?

....

4. When do Bedouins say long poems?

....





Read the following text and answer the questions.

Paris is the capital of France. There are many interesting places to see there. The best way to see them is to walk! You can start your walk at the Arc de Triomphe. The Louvre Museum is one of the most famous art museums in the world. It has many famous paintings such as the Mona Lisa. You can observe the Eiffel Tower from many places in Paris. It is 324 meters tall. Enjoy sightseeing in Paris!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The best way to see the interesting places in Paris is to ....

   a) ride a ferry b) run c) take a taxi d) walk

2. The underlined word "there" refers to ....

   a) Paris b) Cairo c) London d) New York

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where can you observe the Eiffel Tower?

....

4. What famous paintings does the Louvre Museum have?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... in the city can see the tower.

   a) Everybody b) Nothing c) Something d) Everything

2. I'm thirsty. Is there .... to drink?

   a) everything b) anything c) something d) nobody

3. There's .... at the door. It's your cousin.

   a) somebody b) nobody c) something d) everybody

4. Eman is very funny and .... likes her.

   a) anybody b) nobody c) everybody d) something

5. The test is very difficult. Did .... do well in it?

   a) everything b) anybody c) anything d) nobody

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



6. .... in this mall is modern.
   a) Everything b) Everybody c) Somebody d) Nobody
7. There's .... in the bag for you.
   a) everything b) everybody c) anything d) something
8. I bought .... we need in the market this morning.
   a) nothing b) anything c) everybody d) everything
9. I'll buy you .... next time.
   a) anything b) nobody c) something d) somebody
10. Do you know .... who lives near the sea?
   a) anybody b) everybody c) everything d) nothing
11. Name a famous person that .... likes.
   a) everything b) nothing c) everybody d) something
12. Tell your partner .... you know about your school.
   a) nobody b) everything c) somebody d) everybody
13. Is there .... you don't do on vacation?
   a) something b) everybody c) nobody d) anything
14. We had to ask .... for directions.
   a) anything b) somebody c) everything d) nobody
15. There was .... in the aquarium, only us and the fish.
   a) everybody b) nobody c) everything d) anybody
16. I didn't know .... about the Roman history.
   a) everything b) something c) anything d) nothing
17. We go to the sports center .... football.
   a) play b) playing c) to play d) plays
18. I go to the supermarket .... some sunscreen.
   a) buy b) to buy c) buys d) buying
19. Nada is going to the restaurant .... a meal.
   a) have b) has c) to have d) to having

5 Put the words in the correct orders to make sentences.

1. special - want - Is - you - to do - there - anything - ?

....

2. and important - the museum - is - at - old - Everything - .

....

3. center - My - is - the sports - place - favorite - .

....

4. did - see - What - the planetarium - in - they - ?

....

5. Khalifa - Burj - steel - of - made - is - .

....

6. trip - go - a boat - did - on - When - they - ?

....

7. anything - bag - There - my - in - isn't - school - .

....

8. do - What - on vacation - doing - you - like - ?

....

9. good - an oasis - It - is - in - live - to - .

....



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

A visit to Alexandria

Guiding elements:

(big city - harbor - the Citadel of Qaitbay - Alexandria Library - amazing).



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

The Egyptian Museum

Guiding elements:

(in Cairo - huge - statues - tourists - photos - amazing)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (7) Good advice

Sleep

body clock	الساعة البيولوجية للجسم	bright	لامع / ساطع	sleepy	نعسان
wide awake	منتبه / يقظ	darkness	ظلام	bedtime	وقت النوم
full moon	بدر (قمر مكتمل)	moonlight	ضوء القمر		

Tides

Earth	الأرض	high	عالي	tides	المد والجزر
gravity	الجاذبية	low	منخفض	moon	القمر

Story

bottom	قاع	shout	يصرخ / يصيح	obey	يطيع
disobey	يعصى	normal	عادى	officer	ضابط
edge	حافة	intelligent	ذكى	throne	عرش
fair	عادل	main effect	تأثير أساسي	nature	الطبيعة

(If) Zero Conditional "إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

Form التكوين

If / When + present simple , present simple

e.g. If you don't sleep well, you feel tired during the day.

When it's too hot, I get a headache.

(If) First Conditional "إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Form التكوين

If + present simple , affirmative imperative

e.g. If you feel too hot in bed, open the window.

If + present simple , negative imperative

e.g. If you feel hungry at bedtime, don't eat chocolate.

should / shouldn't ينبغي / لا ينبغي

Usage الاستخدام

We use "should / shouldn't" to give advice.

نستخدم "should / shouldn't" لإعطاء النصيحة.

e.g. You should have a shower close to bedtime.

e.g. You shouldn't use phones close to bedtime.

Form التكوين

Subject + should / shouldn't + inf.

e.g. I should help the poor.

e.g. You shouldn't waste your time.

too - enough

1) too

too + adj + to + inf جدًا جدًا لدرجة أن لا

e.g. He is too young to go on his own.

e.g. It's too early to go in the water.

e.g. He is too weak to carry the heavy box.

2) enough

adj + enough to + inf

e.g. I wasn't patient enough to listen to your advice.

e.g. He was rich enough to buy this expensive watch.

so that حتى - لكي

We use "so that": نستخدم (حتى - لكي)

1) To show the purpose of something. لتبين الغرض من شيء ما.

2) To add information, give a reason and explanation for something.

لتضيف معلومات أو تعطي سببًا أو تفسيرًا لشيء ما.

e.g. Close your curtains so that the sun will not make the rooms hot.

Help your child revise unit (7).

ساعد طفلك على مراجعة الوحدة السابعة.



General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where does Marwan live?

....

2. What did Marwan hear?

....

3. Is Marwan awake or sleepy?

....

4. Why can't Marwan sleep?

....



Listen and answer the questions.

1. What does your uncle do?

....

2. Why do you like walking along the coast?

....

3. When did you go for a walk last time?

....

4. Who was shouting?

....



2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

Earth - gravity - moon - water - tides

The moon goes around the Earth. The moon's 1)........................... affects the tides. On one side of the 2)..........................., the moon's gravity pulls the 3)........................... on Earth away from it. The 4)........................... change about every 12 hours.





Read and complete the text with words from the box.

parents - tides - walk - sunscreen - sport

- When you go for a walk on the beach, you should know the time of the 1).................... before you go. If it's sunny, put on some 2)...................... . Walk with friends and tell your 3).................... where you are going. Never go for a 4).................... alone.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Tourism is very important to Egypt because it provides us with a lot of money. Tourists come to Egypt from all over the world to visit Egypt as the weather here is warm and nice, and the people here in Egypt are friendly and kind. The government does its best to encourage tourists to visit Egypt with all means. Tourism is very useful to all of us.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a) tourism b) subjects c) sports d) music
2. The underlined word "here" refers to ....
   a) Syria b) Italy c) Egypt d) Sudan

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why does the government do its best ?

....

4. What's the weather like in Egypt?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.





Read the following text and answer the questions.

King Canute was the king of England around 1,000 years ago. He was a very fair king and looked after his people well. His officers always told him that he was a great man who was very strong and intelligent, but he became bored of what they said. He wanted to be treated like a normal person. One day, he was with his officers on the beach in Southampton, a city in the south of England. His officers said to him, "There isn't anything in this world that would disobey you because you are so great."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. King Canute was the king of ....
   a) England b) Egypt c) Italy d) France
2. The opposite of the underlined word "disobey" is ....
   a) play b) obey c) pray d) stay

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did King Canute want?

....

4. What did his officers always tell him?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... use phones or tablets close to bedtime.
   a) Doesn't b) Don't c) Didn't d) Isn't
2. You .... have a shower or bath close to bedtime.
   a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) may not
3. If I don't get enough water, I .... thirsty.
   a) feels b) feel c) feeling d) felt
4. If you are hungry, ... a sandwich.
   a) has b) have c) having d) had

5. He is .... short to reach the ceiling.
   a) too   b) two   c) to   d) toe
6. She is not strong .... to carry the heavy box.
   a) so   b) too   c) enough   d) for
7. You should .... sunscreen to protect your skin.
   a) wear   b) wears   c) wearing   d) to wear
8. Take a map and a compass .... you won't get lost.
   a) so that   b) that so   c) that   d) too
9. It's .... early to go into the water.
   a) two   b) to   c) too   d) toe
10. I wasn't clever .... to answer that question.
   a) enough   b) so   c) that   d) too
11. I have .... cookies. Would you like some?
   a) too   b) enough   c) so   d) and
12. You .... be kind to your friends.
   a) should   b) shouldn't   c) can't   d) isn't
13. Don't .... to loud music at bedtime.
   a) listen   b) listens   c) listening   d) listened
14. If I .... enough water, I feel thirsty.
   a) drink   b) drinks   c) don't drink   d) drinking
15. Ali is .... lazy to come on time.
   a) two   b) too   c) to   d) so
16. If you need help with your homework, ... your teacher.
   a) ask   b) asks   c) asked   d) asking
17. If you have healthy habits, you .... strong.
   a) feel   b) feels   c) feeling   d) felt
18. The light isn't bright .... I can't read my book.
   a) too   b) enough   c) two   d) so

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



5 Put the words in the correct orders to make sentences.

1. the full - How - can - affect - moon - sleep - our - ?

....

2. you - time - do - to - go - What - bed - ?

....

3. breakfast - What - kind - of - should - eat - we - ?

....

4. water - much - How - you - do - a day - drink - ?

....

5. do - Where - you - leaflets - usually - find - ?

....

6. Canute - was - fair - very - King - .

....

7. lives - is - He - and - a fisherman - the sea - near - .

....

8. dangerous - It's - jump - to - shallow - in - water - .

....

9. a healthy - balance - Find - play - exercise - of - and - .

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Healthy habits

Guiding elements:

(play - exercise - sleep - achieve - phone - friends - strong - happy)



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Tides

Guiding elements:

(moon - Earth - gravity - pulls - 12 hours)



Unit (8) People who help us

Adjectives

annoyed	متضايق - منزعج	amazed	مندهش
annoying	مزعج	amazing	مذهل
excited	متحمس	worried	قلق
frightened	خائف	loud	عالي الصوت
frightening	مخيف	quiet	هادئ
tired	متعب	strange	غريب
tiring	متعب	bright	ساطع - لامع

Animals

fennec fox	ثعلب الفنك	bite	يعض
owl	بومة	fishing net	شبكة صيد
dorcas gazelle	غزال الدوركس	flippers	زعانف
nocturnal	حيوان ليلي (ينشط ليلًا)	diurnal	حيوان نهاري (ينشط نهارًا)



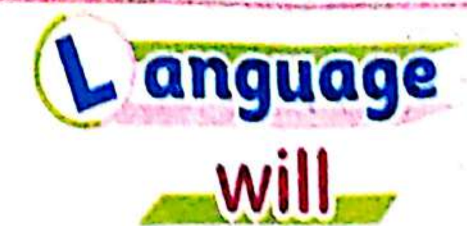
Others

neighborhood	حي - منطقة سكنية	garbage	قمامة
stick	عصا	with special needs	ذوي الهمم
Town Hall	مبنى البلدية	stuck	محشور - عالق
plastic pollution	تلوث المخلفات البلاستيكية	urban environments	بيئات حضرية
light pollution	التلوث الضوئي	concrete	خرسانة

Help your child revise unit (8).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثامنة





will

Usage الاستخدام

- We can use " will" for :

1- promises

e.g. I will buy you a present.

2- requests

e.g. Will you help me with my homework?

3- offers

e.g. I will wash the dishes for you.

Form التكوين

Subject + will + inf.

e.g. I will help you.

Negative النفي

Subject + will not + inf.

e.g. I won't come late.

NOTE **'ll = will** **won't = will not**

Question السؤال

Will + subject + inf. ...?

e.g. Will you play a board game with me?

Note

- We can use "Can" for request and offer.

e.g. Can you make some food for the party?

e.g. I can help you with your homework.



General Activities

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What's Sara making?

....

2. Who did Sara ask for help?

....

3. Why did Laila ask Sara to look for some photos?

....

4. What will Laila do?

....

Listen and answer the questi..ns.

1. Where do Dorcas gazelles live?

....

2. What color are the Dorcas gazelles?

....

3. When do Dorcas gazelles sleep for most of the day?

....

4. Why don't Dorcas gazelles need to drink water?

....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

sense - adapted - nocturnal - developed - diurnal

Nocturnal animals are different to diurnal animals. The senses of 1)...................... animals have 2)...................... differently to diurnal animals. They have 3)...................... to work when it is dark. For example, owls have large eyes that help them to see in the dark. Nocturnal animals also have a very good 4)...................... of hearing. It is important to be able to hear well if it is difficult to see.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

will - do - Can - Has - photos

Sara : Hi Laila. I'm making a poster to ask people to volunteer to clean the beach. 1)........................ you help me?

Laila : Yes, of course. What can I 2)........................?

Sara : Will you look for some 3)........................? I think more people will notice the poster if it has photos.

Laila : Yes, that's a good idea. I 4)........................ look online now. I think I'll be able to find pictures of beaches with garbage on.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in civilization. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt, which were all connected to the Nile. These were:

the flooding season when the fields were <u>full</u> of water.

the growing season when farmers planted lots of different crops.

the harvesting season when farmers cut and stored the crops safely.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Nile used to .... every year.
   a) flood b) dry c) drink d) break
2. The underlined word "full" is opposite of ....
   a) empty b) small c) tall d) long

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did the Nile do for the soil?

....

4. What were the seasons of farming in ancient Egypt?

....



Read the following text and answer the questions.

It is useful for some animals to be nocturnal because they can hide and find more food. It is also easier to sleep in the day in very hot countries. People are causing problems for nocturnal animals because there are more lights in cities, and less darkness.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Nocturnal animals can hide and find more ....
   a) juice b) food c) milk d) water
2. City lights cause more .... for nocturnal animals.
   a) noise b) light c) darkness d) trees

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's easier for nocturnal animals to do in the day?

....

4. Why are people causing problems for nocturnal animals?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I .... help you with your homework.
   a) 've b) 'll c) 'm d) 's
2. They .... be late.
   a) hasn't b) doesn't c) won't d) isn't
3. .... you ask your teacher for help?
   a) Will b) Is c) Does d) Has
4. .... you drive me to school?
   a) Is b) Does c) Has d) Can
5. I will .... you a glass of milk.
   a) gets b) got c) getting d) get
6. We .... take much time.
   a) won't b) hasn't c) doesn't d) isn't

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

7. Can you .... me make a picnic?
   a) helps b) help c) helping d) helped
8. I .... get the tables and chairs out.
   a) am b) is c) have d) will
9. .... you get some juice and water?
   a) Has b) Does c) Will d) Is
10. They .... eat all the bread.
   a) doesn't b) won't c) isn't d) hasn't
11. I was .... on vacation.
   a) excited b) exciting c) amazing d) boring
12. Swimming is ...., but it makes me fit.
   a) tired b) tiring c) excited d) amazed
13. Mom was .... because I left the bag on the bus.
   a) annoying b) exciting c) tiring d) annoyed
14. This book is .... I don't like it.
   a) boring b) amazed c) excited d) bored
15. The traffic at night is ....
   a) annoyed b) frightened c) excited d) annoying
16. Seif played all day. He was very ....
   a) tiring b) frightening c) amazing d) tired
17. The film is .... I want to finish it.
   a) bored b) amazed c) frightened d) exciting
18. I am .... of the dark.
   a) exciting b) amazing c) frightening d) frightened
19. .... you look for some photos?
   a) Has b) Will c) Is d) Does
20. .... you get me some water, please?
   a) Must b) Is c) Will d) Does



5 Put the words in the correct orders to make sentences.

1. animals - diurnal - Some - are - .

....

2. large - eyes - have - Owls - .

....

3. desert - Lots - animals - of - nocturnal - are - .

....

4. looks - when - The park - clean - amazing - it's - .

....

5. birds - The - anymore - tired - were - not - .

....

6. buildings - absorb - can - and - heat - Concrete - .

....

7. pollution - happen - When - light - does - ?

....

8. in the - Nocturnal - day - animals - sleep - .

....

9. happened - turtle - What - the end - to - the - at - ?

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

A concert

Guiding elements:

(raise money - community garden - volunteers - friends - help)



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words.

Light pollution

Guiding elements:

(humans - artificial - cities - bigger - traffic - problems - animals)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



Exam (1) محافظة القاهرة

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who is creative? ....
2. What activity does he love? ....
3. What does he love eating? ....
4. What does he paint and draw? ....

2 Read and complete the box with the words in the box.

rescue - turtle - wings - sea - flippers

While Hana and Bossy were playing on the beach, they saw something strange in the 1).................. It was a 2).................., and a fishing net around its neck. It couldn't move its head or its 3).................. Their mom phoned an animal 4).................. charity. Soon a man arrived to help the turtle.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

It's important to eat the right thing, but we shouldn't forget about what we drink. We should drink a lot of water. Water is great because it hasn't got any fat or sugar. So we should drink more water. Some drinks have a lot of sugar. We shouldn't drink these because they are bad for our bodies and they are bad for our teeth. We should try to drink a glass of milk every day. Fizzy drinks are always bad for our teeth even when they don't have sugar.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... hasn't got any fat or sugar.
   a) Juice b) Fizzy c) Water d) Coral
2. You should drink a lot of ....
   a) fizzy drinks b) water c) cola d) Pepsi

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text?

....

4. Why is water great?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Fares and Waleed became good friends. ( )
2. Granddad can walk. ( )

B Complete the following.

1. Granddad worked as a ....
2. Fares lived in ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You shouldn't .... a lot of soda.
   a) drink b) drinks c) drank d) drinking
2. Everything in the shop .... made of wood.
   a) is b) are c) be d) were
3. If you .... quickly, you can catch the train.
   a) run b) ran c) runs d) running
4. Will you .... the door, please?
   a) open b) opens c) opening d) opened

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. you - Can - help - make - a picnic - me - ?

....

2. jump - the - in - Let's - now - water - .

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite sport

Guiding elements:

(Football - popular - practice - club - teams - strong - friends)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam (2) محافظة القليوبية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where did you go last week? ....
2. How did your sister feel? ....
3. How did you go for the trip? ....
4. How many fish did your mother buy? ....

2 Read and complete the box with the words in the box.

best - phones - late - tired - well

Sleep is very important to everybody. When you feel 1).................., you should sleep. If you don't sleep 2).................., you feel bad during the day. Sleep helps us study well and do our 3).................. at sports. You shouldn't use or put 4).................. or tablets close to your bed.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Adam is eleven years old. He lives by the sea. One day, he went to bed at ten o'clock as usual, but he couldn't sleep. He heard his mum going past his bedroom door. He was wide awake. He wasn't sleepy at all. Mum came in his room and looked outside the window. There was a full moon. The moonlight was shining on the sea. Mum told Adam that the full moon stopped him sleeping. Mum told him that a full moon could change our body clocks. The full moon is very bright, so our body clocks think it's still daytime.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The full moon was .... on the sea.
   a) dark b) shining c) cloudy d) hot
2. A full moon could change our ....
   a) body clocks b) house c) homework d) address

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How could a full moon change our body clocks? ....
4. What time did Adam go to bed? ....



4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Granddad studied hard when he was a boy. ( )
2. Fares wasn't proud of his granddad's work. ( )

B Complete the following.

1. Fares lived in ....
2. Granddad can't travel because he is in a ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. She hates .... emails on her phone.
   a) write b) writes c) to writing d) writing
2. Everything in this shop .... made from recycled plastic.
   a) are b) is c) were d) be
3. Listening to music is .... than playing computer games.
   a) the most popular b) as popular c) popular d) less popular
4. If you need information about a subject, ... on the internet.
   a) search b) searches c) searching d) searched

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. goes - The moon - around - earth - the - always - .

....

2. are - people - There - not - in - many - the countryside - .

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite sport

Guiding elements:

(favorite - sport - football - club - friends - twice a week)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam (3) محافظة دمياط

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What's Sara's favorite hobby? ....
2. How old is Sara? ....
3. What's her father's job? ....
4. How is birdwatching? ....

2 Read and complete the box with the words in the box.

tide - moves - main - water - high

There are two things that cause the tide: the moon and the sun. But the 1)...................... effect is from the moon. When it 2)................ around the Earth, its gravity pulls the water on Earth towards it. This causes a 3)............... tide in the water nearest the moon. On the opposites side of Earth the moon's gravity pulls the Earth away from the 4)...................... , so you get another high tide.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

How do you sleep? When a horse sleeps, its eyes are closed. When a fish sleeps, its eyes are open. A bat sleeps, its eyes are open. A bat sleeps upside down. A bird sleeps setting up. Sleep is something we all do. But some people need to sleep more than others. Babies sleep most of the time. Children sleep about ten or twelve hours. Most adults sleep only seven or eight hours. We all need to sleep because all the parts of our bodies have to rest. We can say that the parts of our body get tired too. The part that needs the most rest is our brain because it does most of the work. When an arm or a leg works hard, it works hard with them.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a) food b) sleep c) subject d) sport
2. Our .... is the part that needs the most rest.
   a) arm b) leg c) hand d) brain

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How does a bat sleep? ....
4. How many hours do children sleep? ....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Mrs Amira changed everything in the house. ( )
2. Bedouins are very hospitable people. ( )

B Complete the following.

1. Fares felt .... of his granddad's work.
2. Bedouins can .... falcons to find and catch animals.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If you .... tired, go to bed.
   a) felt b) feels c) feel d) feeling
2. The lion is .... enough to kill the deer.
   a) strong b) stronger c) the strongest d) strange
3. Talia and Retaj .... like going hiking.
   a) doesn't b) isn't c) aren't d) don't
4. There isn't .... in my school bag.
   a) something b) anything c) nothing d) everything

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. you - Can - some - lend - me - money - ?

....

2. Wael - Uncle - to - trail - the - drove - .

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A day out

Guiding elements:

(Football - popular - practice - club - teams - strong - friends)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam (4) محافظة الدقهلية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Are healthy habits important to everyone? ....
2. What must you do to be healthy? ....
3. What should you do about bad habits? ....
4. What should healthy habits include? ....

2 Read and complete the box with the words in the box.

helped - popular - game - hospital - farm

There was a boy who lived in Ancient Egypt called "Habi". He lived with his parents on a 1).................... near the Nile. Every day, he helped his father look after his animals. After work, he and his sister 2)................ their mother in the house. When they finished the housework, they played a board 3).................... called "Senet". It was a very 4).................... game in ancient Egypt.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Last week, Dina and her family went to Alexandria. It was exciting to visit a big city. Alexandria had the oldest and biggest harbor in Egypt. They went on a boat trip from the <u>harbor</u> at sunset. They could see the city and all the boats on the sea. They visited the Citadel of Qaitbay. It is a very old fort that people used to protect the city. The Library of Alexandria is a famous modern building near the harbor. We can go there to read books.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "harbor" can be replaced by ....

   a) building b) port c) library d) museum

2. We go to the library to .... books.

   a) eat b) read c) play d) throw

B) Answer the following questions.

3. When did Dina go to Alexandria? ....
4. What did people use the Citadel of Qaitbay for? ....



4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Fares lived in Alexandria. ( )
2. Granddad went on a trip to the village. ( )

B Complete the following.

1. The .... tree was Granddad's favorite tree.
2. Fares traveled with Waleed's family by ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I'm hungry. Is there .... to eat?
   a) everything b) anything c) everybody d) anybody
2. If you don't feel sleepy at bedtime, ... a shower or a bath.
   a) to have b) having c) has d) have
3. Playing football is .... popular than doing creative hobbies.
   a) more b) the most c) the least d) better
4. I wasn't patient .... to listen to your advice and Omar's.
   a) so that b) enough c) but d) because

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. birdwatching - My - favorite - is - hobby - .

   ....

2. much - How - water - you - do - drink - ?

   ....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your free-time activities

Guiding elements:

(sports - arts and crafts - picnic - camping - hiking - football - drawing)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Exam (5)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What does Amir love? ....
2. What places does he love going to? ....
3. What does Noha love? ....
4. What activities does she do? ....

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

posters - hobbies - poems - When - why

Omar : Do you like reading 1) .... ?
Hady : Yes, I do.
Omar : 2) .... do you read poems?
Hady : I read them when I'm free.
Omar : What other 3) .... do you like doing?
Hady : I like making 4) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Once upon a time, there was a boy called Ali. His father was a farmer. While Ali was going home one evening, he saw a very <u>old</u> man lying near the road. He was very ill. The boy took the old man to the hospital. The man thanked the boy and asked <u>him</u> about his name and address. The boy wasn't ready to say that his father was a poor farmer, so he said, "My name is Amr and my father is a doctor". A few weeks later the old man died and left all his money to Amr. Of course because Ali told lies, he didn't take any of the man's money.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ali should ....
   a) tell the truth b) take the money c) have wealth d) tell lies
2. The word "old" is the opposite of ....
   a) big b) small c) short d) young

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where did the boy take the old man? ....
4. What does the underlined word "him" refer to? ....



The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Fares loves chatting to granddad. (   )
2. Waleed's family lived in the house where Granddad used to live. (   )

B Complete the following.

1. Fares lived in Alexandria with his parents and ....
2. Fares and Waleed's family went on a trip to ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I learned .... interesting in the math class this morning.
   a) anything b) something c) nothing d) anybody
2. Ramy loves .... football with his friends.
   a) play b) plays c) playing d) played
3. When the park is clean, it looks ....
   a) amazed b) amazing c) excited d) annoyed
4. You shouldn't .... phones or tablets close to bedtime.
   a) using b) used c) use d) has used

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. do - you - What - about - Alexandria - know - ?

....

2. to - couldn't - Marwan - get - sleep - .

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Ancient Egyptian activities

Guiding elements:

(archery - chariot race - wrestling - a board game - fishing - hunting)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam (6)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where did you go on vacation? ____________
2. How did you go to Ras Muhammed National Park? ____________
3. How did Adam feel? ____________
4. What did you try? ____________

2 Read and complete the box with the words in the box.

day - wide awake - sleepy - nocturnal - sun

Some animals are diurnal, which means they are 1)................ in the day. When the 2)................ sets, they are going to sleep. Lots of desert animals are 3)................ They sleep in the 4)................ when it is too hot to look for food.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hala lived with her father and her younger brother. Her mother was dead. Her father worked on his farm nearby. One summer evening, while she was cooking, a big wolf jumped through the open window into the kitchen. It began to eat the food. To keep her brother safe, Hala quickly put her brother into a room and shut the door. Then she picked a stick and tried to drive the wolf away. But it was too big for her. She hurried outside the house and shouted for help. Many people came and killed the wolf. The lesson here is clear. If we have a problem, we must face it ourselves, then ask for help.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... came and killed the wolf.
   a) Mother b) Doctors c) Father d) People
2. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the ....
   a) wolf b) house c) farm d) window

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How did Hala keep her brother safe? ....
4. What is the lesson we learn from the story? ....





4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Fares saw granddad's favorite tree in the garden. (   )
2. Fares and Waleed's family saw the park where it used to be (   )

B Complete the following.

1. When Granddad was a boy, he planted some .... in his garden.
2. Fares learned a lot about life in his .... on his trip.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You should .... a shower or bath close to bedtime.
   a) have b) has c) having d) had
2. The school trip to Karnak Temple was ....
   a) frightened b) interested c) amazing d) annoyed
3. When there's a drought, there isn't .... water.
   a) so b) too c) very d) enough
4. I .... make you a snack.
   a) will b) aren't c) doesn't d) haven't

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. put in - **What** - your - do - you - backpack - ?

....

2. **Camels** - diurnal - are - and - donkeys - animals - .

....

7 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words about:

to your friend about what you like doing in your free time.

Your name is Ali, your email address is Ali@yahoo.com.

Your friend's name is Samy, his email address is Samy@yahoo.com.

Exam (7)

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Why don't you often see a fennec fox? ....
2. What do 'nocturnal animals' mean? ....
3. What do nocturnal animals do when it's dark? ....
4. Give two examples of diurnal animals. ....

2 Read and complete the box with the words in the box.

moon - Earth - gravity - high - tides

The moon goes around the Earth. Its 1) .... pulls the water on Earth towards it. We then have 2) .... tides at the two sides of the Earth and low 3) .... at the other sides of the 4) .... High tides happen about every 12 hours.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

We don't know who made the tea for the first time but we have heard and read many stories about that. Nearly five thousand years age, the king of China boiled his drinking water near a bush. Some of the leaves fell into the pot. When the king drank the water, he liked the taste very much. He knew that the leaves had fallen from that bush. People now think that tea helps them stay awake. We all know that the tea is grown in China and India. Many of us like to have it with milk or lemon when we feel tired. It is usually served in the morning at breakfast.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Tea is usually drunk with ....
   a) milk b) milk or lemon c) oranges d) apples
2. The underlined word "near" means ....
   a) far away b) close to c) good for d) far from

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did the king of China do? ....
4. When is tea usually served? ....

4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Granddad used to play football. ( )
2. Fares gave granddad a record of his village. ( )

B Complete the following.

1. Fares traveled to .... with Waleed and his family.
2. It was difficult for Granddad to travel because he was in ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Youssef says football practice is .... but fun.
   a) tired b) tiring c) amazed d) excited
2. We didn't see .... at school today.
   a) nothing b) anybody c) something d) somebody
3. .... you ask them to help?
   a) Were b) Will c) Are d) Have
4. You are walking .... fast. Please go slowly.
   a) to b) two c) too d) enough

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. enough - isn't - bottle - There - water - my - in - .

....

2. you - Would - camping - like - go - to - ?

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements: **Alexandria**

(important harbor - Bibliotheca Alexandrina - the aquarium - Roman amphitheater)

Exam (8)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where does Nesma love going on the weekend? ....
2. Who does Nesma meet on the weekend? ....
3. What do Nesma and her friends play? ....
4. Why does everybody in the family love the park? ....

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

played - senet - board - activities - play

Salma : Can I ask you about ancient Egypt?
Soha : Yes, of course.
Salma : Did the Ancient Egyptians do any free-time 1) .... ?
Soha : Yes, they did.
Salma : Can you give me an example?
Soha : Yes. They played 2) .... games.
Salma : What the most popular board games did they 3) .... ?
Soha : They played a game called 4) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Last week, Sara went on a school trip to the zoo in Giza. She said, it is a very big zoo with lots of animals. There are fierce animals like lions and tigers. They live in strong cages. They eat a lot of meat. We saw three elephants. My friend Nora rode the smallest one. Elephants like children because they give them bread and bananas. Elephants like bananas very much. They don't eat meat.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Animals live in .... in the zoo.
   a) forest b) cages c) trees d) plants
2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to the ....
   a) children b) elephants c) friends d) trips

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where did Sara go? ....
4. Why do elephants like children? ....



4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Fares gave Granddad a beautiful photo album. ( )
2. Mrs Amira decorated the house because she didn't love it. ( )

B Complete the following.

1. Waleed's family moved from Cairo because ....
2. Granddad was a ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I don't like .... breakfast before seven o'clock.
   a) has b) having c) had d) have
2. When it's too hot, I .... a headache.
   a) gets b) get c) getting d) has got
3. Amir was .... because he was late for football practice.
   a) annoying b) annoyed c) exciting d) tiring
4. There isn't .... in my school bag.
   a) something b) somebody c) everything d) anything

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. buy - I - bread - 'll - some - my mother - for - .

   ....

2. you - If - too - hot, - feel - open - the window - .

   ....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Healthy habits

Guiding elements:

(healthy food - enough sleep- achieve - strong)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Exam (9)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How is the Citadel of Qaitbay?

....

2. What is it made of?

....

3. What are there in the corner of the building?

....

4. Why is it built?

....

2 Read and complete the box with the words in the box.

taking - photography - Alexandria - wonderful - fennec fox

I'm Ramy. I'm ten years old. I live in 1)..................... in Egypt. My favorite hobby is wildlife 2).................... There are lots of 3)..................... animals in Egypt. I really love 4).. photos and learning about them.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name is Mona. I live in Luxor. I'm eleven years old. Our house is big. We have three rooms: a bedroom, a bathroom and a kitchen. We also have a small barn in the garden. There are five sheep and two horses in the barn. My father is a farmer and my mother is a <u>a housewife</u>. I read at the school library every day.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "a housewife" means she ....
   a) works in a shop. b) works in a school
   c) doesn't work d) works in bank
2. There isn't a .... in Mona's house.
   a) bedroom b) living room c) bathroom d) kitchen

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Mona live? ....
4. How many sheep are there in the barn? ....



4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Granddad used to be a doctor . ( )
2. Mrs Amira showed the boys all the rooms in the house. ( )

B Complete the following.

1. Fares told his family about his ....
2. .... was Fares's new friend.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I didn't know .... on my first day at school.
   a) nobody b) anybody c) everything d) somebody
2. If you .... well, you feel tired during the day.
   a) doesn't sleep b) don't sleep c) didn't sleep d) sleeps
3. Someone parked in front of my car. It was really ....
   a) annoy b) annoys c) annoyed d) annoying
4. We can't sit at the table. There aren't .... chairs.
   a) too b) much c) enough d) little

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. enjoy - I - time - outside - spending - my free - .

....

2. in the world - people - many - How - Bedouin - there - are - ?

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Nocturnal and diurnal animals

Guiding elements:

(nocturnal - day - night - too hot - camels)

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Exam (10)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where do people in your country like to spend their free time?
2. When do you and your family go camping?
3. What's the weather like in Norway?
4. What do you do in the winter?

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

Kings - train - amazing - Luxor - boring

Ali : Where did you go last holiday?
Omar : I went to 1) ....
Ali : How did you go there?
Omar : By 2) ....
Ali : What did you like there?
Omar : I liked the Valley of 3) ....
Ali : Why?
Omar : Because it's very big and 4) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Tom is my friend. He is from London. He visits Egypt every year. He visits the Egyptian Museum and Cairo Tower in Cairo. He goes to Giza to visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx. Tom also visits the temples at Luxor. He likes taking photographs of our monuments.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to ....
   a) Omar b) Peter c) John d) Tom
2. Tom goes to Giza to visit the Pyramids and the ....
   a) temples b) monuments c) Sphinx d) Tower

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does Tom visit in Cairo? ....
4. What does he like doing? ....



4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Fares recorded a video of his trip to granddad's village. ( )
2. Granddad studied hard when he was young. ( )

B Complete the following.

1. .... loved chatting to granddad.
2. Waleed and Fares saw the .... where granddad used to teach.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There isn't .... to eat in the kitchen.
   a) something b) nothing c) somebody d) anything
2. Do you like .... TV?
   a) watched b) watch c) watching d) watches
3. If you .... scared of dark, leave the light on.
   a) were b) have c) be d) are
4. Cooking is the .... popular activity.
   a) less b) more c) least d) much

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. bright - is - The full - very - moon - in the sky - .

....

2. did - What - see - they - the - in - planetarium - ?

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Things you do in your free time

Guiding elements:

(healthy food - enough sleep- achieve - strong)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Exam (11)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When did you go to Alexandria? ....
2. Where do you live? ....
3. What does Alexandria have?. ....
4. Why did people build the fort? ....

2 Read and complete the box with the words in the box.

rains - indoors - free - picnic - busy

There are a lot of different ways that people spend their 1).................... time here in Canada. When it's warm out, people have a 2).................... in the park. We have a lot of green spaces in my city, but the only problem is that it 3).................... a lot. So, when it's raining, I go swimming. The pool is 4).................... so we don't have to worry about the rain or even the very cold winters which we have here.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

We went to Sharm El-Sheikh on vacation. It was a lot of fun! On the last day, we got a boat to visit Ras Muhammed National Park. I liked the boat trip, but my little brother Adam felt sick. He had to sit on Mom's knee! When we got to the national park, we tried snorkeling. It was amazing! We wore masks over our faces and used a snorkel to breathe under water. We loved swimming in the clear warm water. We saw bright colorful fish swimming quickly around us, and some beautiful tall sea plants, too.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "vacation" means ....
   a) park b) birthday c) holiday d) party
2. The underlined word "quickly" is the opposite of ....
   a) heavily b) happily c) fast d) slowly

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why did they wear masks and use a snorkel? ....
4. What did they see while swimming? ....



4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Fares wasn't interested to see granddad's village. ( )
2. Granddad used to go to the theater a lot. ( )

B Complete the following.

1. Fares made a new .... called Waleed.
2. Although granddad couldn't go on the trip, he was very .... for Fares.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. There isn't .... water in my bottle. Can I have some more?
   a) too b) two c) so d) enough
2. If you feel tired, ... to bed early.
   a) go b) goes c) going d) went
3. My brother hates .... early.
   a) sleep b) sleeps c) sleeping d) slept
4. The match was exciting, so Ali was ....
   a) amazing b) boring c) excited d) tiring

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. you - enjoy - Do - time - spending - outside - ?

....

2. good - King Canute - was - very - and - fair - .

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Khan El-Khalili

Guiding elements:

(famous - market - buy - gifts - pots - artifacts)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Exam (12)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where is the Bibliotheca Alexandrina?

....

2. What are also there in the Bibliotheca Alexandrina?

....

3. How many books does the Bibliotheca Alexandrina have?

....

4. What did you see in the planetarium?

....

2 Read and complete the box with the words in the box.

great - lesson - loved - throne - servants

Canute's officers 1)................................ him so much. They said he was a 2)....................... king. Canute asked his 3)................. to put his 4)................................ near the edge of the sea to teach them a lesson.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

You do not often see a fennec fox, because they are nocturnal. That means they only come out at night. In my project, I'm going to tell you about nocturnal animals. Noctural animals sleep in the day but are awake at night. They hunt for their prey or look for food when it is dark. Other animals like camels and donkeys are diurnal, which means they are awake in the day. We see these more often than nocturnal ones!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about .... animals.
   a) nocturnal b) usual c) normal d) abnormal
2. The underlined word "nocturnal" means they come out ....
   a) at noon b) at night
   c) in the morning d) in the evening

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What are diurnal animals? ....
4. What do nocturnal animals do at night? ....



4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Fares made a new friend called Waleed. ( )
2. Granddad could go on the trip. ( )

B Complete the following.

1. Fares lived in ....
2. Mrs Amira showed Waleed and Fares..

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The film was ....
   a) bored b) boring c) excited d) amazed
2. There is .... at the door. I think it's your friend.
   a) somebody b) nobody c) anybody d) something
3. It isn't hot .... to swim in the sea today.
   a) so b) enough c) too d) very
4. If the sun is very hot, ... some sunscreen.
   a) wears b) wear c) wearing d) wore

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. will - the volunteers - What - at the beach - do - ?

....

2. place - favorite - My - café - is - the - .

....



7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Things you like to do at the weekend

Guiding elements:

(park - beach - football)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Exam (13)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Why don't you have a lot of free time?

....

2. What do you do when you have free time?

....

3. What is Origami?

....

4. Is Origami popular in Colombia?

....

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box.

How - Snorkeling - enjoy - Sharm El-Sheikh - When

Heba : Where did you go on vacation ?
Mona : I went to 1) ....
Heba : 2) .... did you go there ?
Mona : By bus.
Heba : What did you 3) .... doing in the sea?
Mona : 4) .... and swimming.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Tourists come to Egypt from all over the world. They come by plane or ship. They like to visit Egypt because of its fine weather and beautiful places. They can visit many interesting places like the Pyramids, the Sphinx and the Egyptian Museum. At the end of their visit, they feel very happy.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Egyptian Museum is a very interesting..
   a) place b) tourist c) weather d) ship
2. The underlined word "interesting"is the opposite of ....
   a) amazing b) wonderful c) great d) boring

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why do tourists like to visit Egypt? ....
4. Where do tourists come from? ....



4 The Reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Waleed is Fares's new friend. ( )
2. Fares was proud of his Granddad. ( )

B Complete the following.

1. Granddad's life was ....
2. Fares saw .... in the garden.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When it's too hot, I .... a headache.
   a) get b) gets c) got d) getting
2. Omar is too slow .... the race.
   a) win b) wins c) winning d) to win
3. You .... use phones close to bedtime.
   a) should b) must c) shouldn't d) aren't
4. Don't worry! I .... to water the plants.
   a) was forgetting b) will forget c) forgot d) won't forget

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. gravity - moon's - The - tides - affects - the - .

....

2. children - many - How - visiting - are - museum - the - ?

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Helping the community

Guiding elements:

(help - volunteer - better - protect - environment - posters)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Listening Texts

Unit (5)

1- Listen and answer the questions.

Last Friday, my brother Sameer wrote a letter to his friend, Jack. Jack lived in England. Sameer found Jack's address in a magazine. Sameer told his friend that he was twelve years old and he went to a primary school. He said that his favorite subject was Science. His hobby was music.

- Listen and answer the questions.

I'm Amira and I love having free time because I can do my favorite things. For example, my family and I enjoy spending time outside. My mom, dad, and I love going hiking in the mountains and the desert. We like going to the beach, too. I love going swimming, but my mom doesn't like swimming and always reads a book at the beach. Sometimes my mom and I record a video at the beach to send it to my grandparents.

Unit (6)

1- Listen and answer the questions.

Last month, I went to Port Said with my family. I live in a small town between Cairo and Port Said, so it was exciting to visit a big city. I went shopping in big malls there. I bought some wonderful clothes. I came back by train. It was a nice day.

- Listen and answer the questions.

I really liked seeing the birds and animals in the zoo. The zoo is very big. It has a lot of wild animals. I liked the elephant most. I fed the monkeys some bananas. I had lunch there.

Unit (7)

1- Listen and answer the questions.

Marwan lives by the sea. One evening, he went to bed at the usual time, but he could not sleep. He heard his mom go past his bedroom door and said, "Mom, I can't sleep! I'm wide awake! I'm not sleepy at all!" Mom came in his room and looked outside the window. "I know why you can't sleep," she said. "We have a full moon".

- Listen and answer the questions.

My uncle is a fisherman and he lives near the sea. When we visit him, we like to go walking along the coast because it's beautiful. Last time we went to see him, we went for a walk late in the afternoon. Then I heard someone shouting from the beach below us. It was a boy on some rocks in the sea.

Unit (8)

1- Listen and answer the questions.

Sara is making a poster to ask people to volunteer to clean the beach. She asks Laila to help her. Laila agrees happily and asks what she could do. She tells her to look for some photos

because people will notice the poster if it has photos. Laila will look online and will be able to find pictures of beaches with garbage on.

- Listen and answer the questions.

Dorcas gazelles live in and near the hot dry deserts of North Africa. They are small animals and they are the same color as sand. They sleep for most of the day when it is hot. At night it is cooler so they look for leaves, fruits, and flowers from desert plants. Dorcas gazelles do not need to drink water because they get all the water they need from their food.

Exam (1)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Amir is a creative boy. He loves reading. He loves eating chocolate. He paints and draws beautiful pictures.

Exam (2)

- Listen and answer the questions.

We went to Alexandria on vacation. My sister felt sick. We went a boat trip. My mother bought four big fish.

Exam (3)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Sara's favourite hobby is birdwatching. She is ten years old. Sara's dad is a tour guide. Birdwatching is awesome.

Exam (4)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Healthy habits are very important. You must have balance of play, exercise, food and sleep. We should keep ourselves away from bad habits. Healthy habits include everything in our daily life.

Exam (5)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Amir loves traveling. He wants to do more. He loves going to places which he's never been to before. Fares is creative and makes lots of art. He paints and he draws. Noha loves nature. She hugs great big trees. She goes hiking and camping and talks to the bees.

Exam (6)

- Listen and answer the questions.

We went to Sharm El-Sheikh on vacation on the last day. We got a boat to visit Ras Muhammed National Park. I liked the boat trip, but my little brother Adam felt sick. He had to sit on Mom's knee. When we tried snorkeling, it was amazing.

Exam (7)

- Listen and answer the questions.

You don't often see a fennec fox because they are nocturnal. Nocturnal animals sleep in the day but are awake at night. They hunt their prey or look for food when it is dark. Other animals like camels and donkeys are diurnal, which means they are awake in the day.

Exam (8)

- Listen and answer the questions.

I'm Nesma. I love going to the park on the weekend. I meet my friends there, and we play games. It's a beautiful place, and everything in the park is clean. Nobody leaves garbage or drops litter. There's always something to see or do. Everybody in my family loves the park.

- Listen and answer the questions.

The Citadel of Qaitbay is a big square building with very thick walls. Almost everything is made of stone, and there are tall round towers in the corners of the building. It's a fort, and it was built to protect the city. Nobody one could go in it when the doors were closed.

- Listen and answer the questions.

People in my country like to spend their free time outside, and I do, too. My family and I go camping a lot in the summer, so it's very important to know how to put up a tent! The weather can change very fast in Norway, and you don't want to get wet-especially if it's cold. We also go hiking all summer, and in the winter, we go skiing down the mountains.

Exam (11)

- Listen and answer the questions.

Last week I went to Alexandria with my family. I live in a small village between Alexandria and Cairo, so it was exciting to visit a big city. Alexandria has a very important harbor. It's the oldest and biggest in Egypt. We went on a boat trip from the harbor at sunset. We visited the Citadel of Qaitbay, too. This is a very old fort which people used to protect the city.

Exam (12)

- Listen and answer the questions.

The Bibliotheca Alexandrina is a famous modern building near the harbor in Alexandria. The round building is beautiful and different to anything I've seen before. It has over 4 million books! There are also museums and a planetarium, where we saw an amazing display about stars and planets. .

Exam (13)

- Listen and answer the questions.

I don't have a lot of free time because I am very busy with my school work. But when I have free time, I do arts and crafts. Do you know origami? This is a craft which is from Japan, and you use paper to make the shapes of animals, space rockets, or almost anything. It's not very popular here in Colombia where I live, but my friends and I like it a lot.

Book Answers

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Football. 2) With my friends.
3) Sunscreen. 4) Fares.

2) Read and complete.

1) camping 2) put up 3) weather 4) hiking

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) free-time activities 2) sister
3) In the Siwa Oasis in the Western Desert.
4) Because it's cooler.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) play 2) on 3) camping
4) skiing 5) have 6) do

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Amir met his best friend playing football.
2) Can you put up a tent?
3) What activities do you do in your free time?

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

In my free time I like to play football. I always put on sunscreen before I play a football match. The best part about playing a team sport is when I make new friends. Some people like to have a picnic in the park. Sometimes I go to the library to read and borrow books.

Lesson (2)

Practice

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) swimming 2) playing 3) spending
4) going 5) putting

2) Correct the verbs between brackets.

1) reading 2) playing 3) doing 4) putting

3) Read and match.

1) d 2) f 3) a
4) e 5) b 6) c

Activities

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Because she can do many favorite things.
2) In the mountains.
3) Swimming. 4) At the beach.

2) Read and complete.

1) cousins 2) age
3) computer games 4) dinner

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) eating 2) doing 3) waiting 4) putting
5) sitting 6) playing 7) having
8) painting 9) growing 10) writing

4) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) What do you like doing on the beach?
2) They love seeing our adventures.
3) We don't like putting up a tent.
4) Amira enjoys spending time outside.

5) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

My free time is very important. I like to use it in a useful way. I like spending a lot of time outside. I like reading a book. I enjoy playing sports. I hate swimming. I don't enjoy playing computer games or watching TV.

Lesson (3)

1) Read and complete.

1) activities 2) the most
3) more 4) Cooking

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) do 2) cooking 3) watching
4) most 5) doing 6) more
7) least 8) Does 9) most 10) reading

3) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Swimming is the most popular activity.
2) Cooking is the least popular activity.
3) Do you enjoy cooking?
4) Do you like making new friends?

5) I really enjoy watching movies.

4) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

My favorite sport is swimming. I like it very much. I always practice it. I practice it in the club. It makes me strong. It isn't expensive. I go to the swimming pool once a week with my friends. I don't swim alone because I might get hurt.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Travelling. 2) Lots of arts.
3) Nature. 4) Noha.

2) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) new places 2) what children like doing
3) He shows us his heart.
4) He loves making dishes.

3) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Do you like reading poems?
2) Fares likes making art.
3) The sun is in the sky.
4) Tarek really likes making dishes.

4) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Hobbies are so important to us. We all have to practice hobbies. Amir loves traveling. Fares is creative and he makes lots of arts. Noha loves nature. She hugs great big trees. I love photography. So, I have a new camera to take photos of interesting things which.

Lesson (5)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) In Ancient Egypt.
2) He helped his father look after his animals.
3) Hapi and Amunet. 4) Senet.

2) Read and complete.

1) fine 2) free time
3) watching 4) Ancient Egypt

3) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Where did Hapi and his family live?
2) Hapi saw many people and buildings.
3) Children enjoyed playing music in Ancient Egypt.
4) What were the boys doing in the city?

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) Ancient Egyptian Activities
2) senet 3) Snake game.
4) There were crocodiles and hippos in the Nile.

Lesson (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) She's ten. 2) In Luxor.
3) Birdwatching. 4) To see birds.

2) Read and complete.

1) tour guide 2) birds
3) gorgeous 4) Birdwatching

3) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Who is Ramy writing to?
2) I'm your new email friend.
3) What is his favorite animal?

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) Alexandria 2) fennec fox
3) His parents and his older brother Sherif.
4) About 300 photos.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) is 2) beautiful 3) Where 4) doing

6) Write an email of FIFTY (50) words.

From: Sara
To: Jane
Subject: My favorite hobbies

Dear Jane,

I'm very happy to write to you. I have two hobbies. I like photography, it's my favorite hobby. I also like watching birds. There are many gorgeous birds. Can you tell me about yourself?

See you son,
Sara

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) To the desert.

2) Sunscreen and food. 3) My uncle.

4) She cooked our meal.

2) Read and complete.

1) summer 2) camping 3) trail 4) beautiful

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) cousins 2) camping

3) Uncle Wael. 4) The tent.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) pin 2) campfire 3) tent 4) light

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) What can you learn from the story?

2) Uncle Wael drove to the trail.

3) Amira put some food on the campfire.

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

I'm going on a camping trip. I'm going with my family. I'm going to take a tent, a map, a backpack and sunscreen. I can go camping and hiking. The camp will be near Fayoum. The desert there is fascinating. We'll see some of the rare animals.

Exam on Unit (5)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Singing and dancing.

2) Musical instruments.

3) Senet and mehen. 4) In the Nile.

2) Read and complete.

1) burger 2) onions 3) eating 4) ice cream

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) children in Ancient Egypt

2) senet and mehen

3) Snake game. 4) In the Nile.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) F 2) T

B) Complete the following.

1) Fares 2) Granddad

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) spending 2) don't

3) reading 4) least

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) What do you like doing in your free time?

2) They love seeing our adventure.

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

In my free time. I practice many hobbies. I like reading books. I also like swimming. I sometimes go camping. I like doing arts and crafts. Other people like playing computer games and watching TV. Others like photography and drawing.

Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Alexandria

2) Between Alexandria and Cairo.

3) With my parents. 4) Yes, it was.

2) Read and complete.

1) trip 2) sea 3) Citadel 4) protect

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) the Roman amphitheater

2) Alexandria

3) For musical shows-meetings and plays.

4) I can rent bikes.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) harbor 2) Citadel 3) aquarium

4) bike paths 5) ruins 6) fort

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Alexandria has a very important harbor.

2) I went to Aswan with my family.

3) The library is a famous modern building.

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Alexandria is my favorite place to visit. It's a very big city. It has a harbor. It is very important. We can visit Alexandria library.

Book Answers

The Citadel of Qaitbay is a very old fort. It has amazing beaches. People can swim in the sea or play on the beaches. It has amazing places like restaurants, cinemas and museums.

Lesson (2)

Practice

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) anything 2) somebody
3) everybody 4) anybody
5) Everything 6) something
7) anything 8) everything
9) anybody 10) anybody

Activities

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) The sports center. 2) In our village.
3) On Thursday. 4) With our friends.

2) Read and complete.

1) anything 2) anybody
3) everything 4) everybody

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) beautiful 2) litter
3) Nesma loves going to the park.
4) He plays football.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b. c or d.

1) anything 2) anybody
3) somebody 4) nobody

5) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

My favorite place is the sports center. I go there on Friday to play football. I meet my friends, and we have so much fun. We run, kick the ball, and laugh together. It is a great time, and I love going there every week to play!

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) It's a big square building with very thick walls. 2) Stone.
3) Tall round towers. 4) To protect the city.

2) Read and complete.

1) did 2) It's 3) steel 4) unusual

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) arches 2) statues 3) unusual
4) stone 5) Museum 6) designed
7) Burj Khalifa 8) performances
9) protect

4) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) The Roman amphitheater is in Alexandria.
2) There are some tall columns in the building.
3) There's something unusual about this tower.
4) The Iconic Tower will be in the New Administrative Capital.
5) Everybody in the city can see this tower.

5) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Burj Khalifa is a famous building in Dubai. It's made of steel and it has lots of glass windows. It is a very amazing building to live and work. It's one of the modern wonders in the world. They made many films inside it because of its beauty.

Lesson (4)

Practice

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) to sit 2) to make 3) look 4) to buy
5) to watch 6) to meet 7) to 8) Why

Activities

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) They will renew their computer room.
2) The internet. 3) Happy.
4) It will help him do his homework and researches.

2) Read and complete.

1) do 2) Friday 3) clothes 4) online

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) designs 2) Architects 3) stores 4) cool
5) rooftop 6) fountain 7) news

restaurant

4) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) The shopping mall will have something for everybody.

2) Do you like my new house?

3) There's something on the table.

5) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) stores 2) happy

3) We can watch them at the movie theater.

4) As there will be lots of trees and plants.

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

There is a new shopping mall in my area. There are a lot of stores. You can buy everything from these stores. There is a rooftop garden with lots of trees and plants inside. I meet my friends and eat food in the restaurant. I watch films at a movie theater.

Lesson (5)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) He was walking through the date palms near his home.

2) It was hot. 3) His grandpa.

4) He showed Younis a bucket of thin silver fish.

2) Read and complete.

1) told 2) to 3) oasis 4) fossils

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) palms 2) bright 3) bushes 4) bucket

5) fossils 6) curved 7) oasis 8) lake

9) desert 10) sand

4) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Grandpa showed Younis a bucket of fresh fish.

2) There will be trees and plants inside.

3) An oasis has some plants and fresh water.

4) What food can you grow in an oasis?

5) Why is it good to live in an oasis?

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) sea 2) fossils

3) Because of the amazing whale fossils that people found in the desert.

4) The largest complete whale fossil in the world.

5) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Wadi Hitan is a beautiful and curved building in the desert near Fayoum. It was built because of the amazing whale fossils that people found in the desert. There are also shark and crocodiles fossils. We can see in the museum the complete fossil of whale which is seen there only.

Lesson (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Aswan. 2) The High Dam.

3) A restaurant. 4) It was delicious.

2) Read and complete.

1) fruit 2) breakfast

3) Hurghada 4) market

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) vacation 2) Park 3) snorkels

4) breathe 5) figs 6) excited 7) dessert

4) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Where did Amira go on vacation?

2) We loved swimming in the clear water.

3) We helped make sayadeya for dinner.

4) Did everyone enjoy the boat trip?

5) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

I went on vacation to Sharm El-Sheikh. I went by bus. I saw bright colorful fish. We enjoyed swimming. I felt very excited. I went hiking with my family in the mountains. We spent a nice time there.

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) In a large house in London.

2) To work in another country.

3) A smaller house.

4) Near a railway.

2) Read and complete.

1) glad 2) hit 3) loudly 4) frightened

3) Read and match.

1) a 2) d 3) b 4) c

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) Glad 2) loudly 3) wave 4) off

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) They waved the flag to stop the train.
2) Why isn't Phyllis frightened in the countryside?
3) The driver stopped the train and thanked the children.
4) Where would you like to live?

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

I read an amazing story about the railway children. They saw a tree on the rails of the train. They ran to watch the people. The boy took off his red shirt and waved with it. The driver saw him and stopped the train. He thanked them for saving the people on the train.

Exam on Unit (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) In Dahab 2) In summer.
3) It's really hot. 4) Sunscreen.

2) Read and complete.

1) club 2) Why
3) good 4) come

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) open 2) Babies
3) It sleeps with it's eyes closed.
4) They sleep about ten or twelve hours.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) F 2) T

B) Complete the following.

1) Alexandria 2) football

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) somebody 2) anything
3) to take 4) anybody

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) The children used a red flag to stop the train.
2) Can we buy some cakes quickly?

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

The Pyramids are in Giza. They are huge buildings made of stone. They are very famous. Tourists come from all over the world to visit them. They take photos. Really they are amazing. They can ride horses or camels. They spend a nice time there. They buy souvenirs to remember the visit.

Activities on Review (3)

Student's Answer.

أسئلة من امتحانات المحافظات على الوحدتين (5 - 6)

- **Choose the correct answer from ، ، ، or .**

1) most 2) most
3) doing 4) more
5) doesn't 6) going
7) Nothing 8) Everything
9) anything 10) make
11) see 12) is

Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) By the sea. 2) No, he couldn't sleep.
3) His mom. 4) I can't sleep. I'm awake.

2) Read and complete

1) moon 2) sun 3) clocks 4) gravity

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) darkness 2) sleepy 3) Moonlight
4) bright 5) wide awake 6) at
7) curtains 8) gravity

4) Read the following text and answer the questions

1) moon 2) happens
3) Every 28 days. 4) A half moon.

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) How can the full moon affect our sleep?

2) Marwan started to feel sleepy.

3) What did you learn in the story?

4) I love looking at the full moon.

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

I'm wide awake. I can't sleep at all. I feel really sleepy. We have a full moon tonight. It is very bright, it's shining on the sea. The full moon's gravity affects our sleep and changes our body clocks. To sleep well make sure you have good curtains.

Lesson (2)

Practice

-) Read and match.

1) c 2) b 3) d 4) a

Practice

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) go 2) ask 3) feel 4) go
5) are 6) have 7) have 8) run
9) drink 10) go

Practice

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) shouldn't 2) should 3) should 4) shouldn't
5) do 6) eat 7) should

Activities

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Yes, it is. 2) It helps heal my body.
3) Our mood. 4) Yes, it does.

2) Read and complete.

1) brain 2) bedtime 3) hard 4) digest

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) bedtime 2) drink 3) do 4) eat 5) don't

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) wide-awake

2) bad

3) - Have a shower or a bath.
- Don't use phones or tablets.

4) You shouldn't have your electronic devices with you.

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Don't go to bed too late.

2) I always have a shower in the morning.

3) What is the football coach doing?

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

You should get enough sleep to relax and refresh yourself. You should drink water. It is good for you. You should read a book at bedtime. It's unhealthy to get up late. You shouldn't eat a lot of chocolate. It's bad for your teeth. You shouldn't keep mobiles or tablets near you. You shouldn't listen to loud music.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Six to eight glasses of water.

2) Our heart and teeth.

3) For one hour.

4) Playing, going out, walking and swimming.

2) Read and complete.

1) play 2) day 3) night 4) fun

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) devices 2) balance
3) achieve 4) relationships
5) for

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) healthy 2) effective

3) To become successful in life and have fun.

4) Everything you do in your daily life.

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) What kind of breakfast should we eat?

2) Find a healthy balance of exercise and play.

3) How many hours do you sleep a night?

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Healthy habits are important to all of us. Find a healthy balance of play and exercise, food, water, social time and good sleep. If you do this, you can achieve everything you want.

Enjoy outside world with friends and family. If you have healthy habits, you feel strong, happy and have good relationships.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Every week. 2) Our body.
3) Health for people with heart diseases.
4) Yes, it is.

2) Read and complete.

1) early 2) dangerous 3) deep 4) hurt

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) safe 2) for 3) give
4) patient 5) after 6) hurt

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) foot 2) Ibrahim
3) He suggested jumping in the water.
4) Because they had their lunch a short time ago.

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Would you like to go swimming?
2) Don't jump in water that is not deep.
3) It's too early to go in the water.

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Swimming in a pool is very dangerous when the water isn't deep enough. You may hurt your foot. Don't eat before swimming. Digest your food first then go swimming. Really swimming is fun. Always swim with friends to help you if anything happens.

Lesson (5)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) A fisherman. 2) Near the sea.
3) Walking along the coast.
4) Someone shouting.

2) Read and complete.

1) gravity 2) high 3) tides 4) happen

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) moon 2) most 3) twice
4) less 5) deep 6) saved

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) tides 2) pushes
3) The moon and the sun.
4) Its gravity pulls the water on Earth towards it.

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) The moon goes around the Earth.
2) Which tide can be more dangerous?
3) Why was Hana at the beach?

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

The moon goes around the earth. Its gravity pulls the water on Earth towards it. This causes a high tide in the water nearest the moon. The high tides are more dangerous than the low tides. In low tides people are safe. Nothing can happen to them. They won't drown.

Lesson (6)

Practice

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) that 2) so that 3) so
4) so that 5) so that

Activities

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) A leaflet is a written work or composition that has been published.
2) I use heading with different sizes and styles of writing.
3) I use main heading and subheading.
4) In museums, libraries and sports centers.

2) Read and complete.

1) healthy 2) teeth 3) sunscreen 4) protected

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) curtains 2) skin 3) protected
4) so that 5) compass 6) respect

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) pyramids 2) Sunday
3) They had eggs, beans and cheese.
4) At 7 o'clock.

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) What are the best tips for staying cool?
2) Where do you find leaflets?
3) You should plan your trip.
4) You should respect the environment.

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Walk with a group of friends or family so that you won't be alone. Take a map or a compass so that you won't get lost. Take a phone so that you can get help if you need it. Wear good hiking boots so that your feet will feel comfortable. Take lots of water and snacks so that you won't get thirsty or hungry. Put on sunscreen so that you won't get burned.

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Canute was a famous king.
2) He was called the Great.
3) In the 11th century.
4) English and Danish kingdoms.

2) Read and complete.

1) servants 2) throne 3) edge 4) officers

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) Canute 2) clever
3) A very fair and kind king.
4) That he was a great man, very strong and intelligent.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) England 2) after 3) bored 4) obeyed
5) Normal 6) Throne 7) obey

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Canute was the king of England.
2) Was King Canute fair and intelligent?
3) Did his officers obey him?

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

King Canute was the king of England. He was fair and intelligent. His officers obeyed him and said he was great, but he wanted to show them a lesson. He asked his servants to put his throne by the edge of the sea to prove he was just a normal person.

Exam on Unit (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) My uncle. 2) Because it's beautiful.
3) Because of the tides and the gravity of Earth. 4) He saved him.

2) Read and complete.

1) habits 2) successful
3) enough 4) Breathe

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) carefully 2) water
3) To use water carefully.
4) It refers to water.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) T 2) F

B) Complete the following.

1) village 2) Granddad

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) raise 2) too
3) enough 4) so that

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Where do you usually find leaflets?
2) Marwan lives by the sea.

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Healthy habits are very important to be successful in life. Eat healthy food, fresh vegetables and fruit. Find time to play sports. Sleep well all through the night. You should do a lot of exercises to be fit. Breathe fresh air. If you have healthy habits, you can feel strong, happy and have good relationships. Also you can achieve everything you want.

Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) A volunteer. 2) To help my community.

3) New skills, making new friends.

4) Different ways to make our community stronger.

2) Read and complete.

1) beautiful 2) annoying 3) sticks 4) hours

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) tired 2) frightened 3) worrying

4) exciting 5) up 6) neighborhood

7) sticks 8) special

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) baker 2) grandma

3) They were worried about their homes.

4) It was frightening.

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Why is it important to help other people?

2) Have you ever wanted to be a volunteer?

3) Football is tiring but it's great fun.

4) The heavy rain was frightening.

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

We all live in a community and we should all help the people who live in it. Have you ever wanted to be a volunteer? It's a great way to help your community. You can learn new skills, make new friends, and make your neighborhood a better place. We spoke to people in our neighborhood about different ways people can make our community stronger.

Lesson (2)

Practice

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) help 2) Can 3) put

4) 'll 5) Will

2) Read and match.

1) c 2) a 3) b

3) Read and choose the correct word.

1) 'll 2) won't 3) without

Activities

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) He is painting the library today.

2) The rainwater.

3) At 10 o'clock after basketball practice.

4) Basketball.

2) Read and complete.

1) put 2) I'll 3) get 4) won't

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) cousins 2) bring

3) Amir will cut up some tomatoes and cucumbers.

4) To get some bottles of water from the fridge.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) 'll 2) Will 4) won't 5) wash

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Will you ask Mom to go to the club?

2) I'll help you clean the kitchen.

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

I will go on a camping trip next week. I will go to Siwa Oasis. I will go with my family. I will take a tent, a sleeping bag, a camera and a map to know the directions. I make will a campfire. It will be a wonderful trip.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Yes, they are. 2) A community garden.

3) They can relax. 4) Flower, plants and trees.

2) Read and complete.

1) Repair 2) why 3) volunteers 4) skills

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) garden 2) collect

3) Plants, trees and flowers.

4) To make a poster.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) raises 2) get 3) Will

4) repair 5) 'll

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Magdy can buy food and drink.

2) Trees absorb carbon dioxide.

3) Will you get some water a...

What are they raising money for?

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

(Helping the planet)

To help the planet, we can repair clothes, furniture, electronic devices and lots more! We are raising money for new sports equipment at the community centre. You can also buy food and drink. We need volunteers and friends to help us make the planet cleaner and safer.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) On the beach.

2) Something strange in the sea.

3) It looked like a fishing net.

4) It was a shell "turtle".

3) Read and complete.

1) strange 2) fishing net 3) flippers. 4) charity

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) water 2) not good 3) Volunteers.

4) To enjoy the beaches and the beautiful clear blue water.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) strange 2) net 3) flippers

4) disappears 5) stuck

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Sea turtles don't bite.

2) What was around the turtle's neck?

3) There was a small café on the beach.

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Many turtles have accidents with boats or they get stuck in fishing nets. We need volunteers to help us look after injured turtles at the rescue center. As more hotels are built, turtles lose their beach habitats. We need to protect the beaches when turtles come to lay eggs.

Lesson (5)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Nocturnal and diurnal animals.

2) Owls. 3) To help them see in the dark.

4) Sense of hearing.

2) Read and complete.

1) Why 2) nocturnal 3) come 4) owls

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) hot 2) Dorcas gazelles

3) When it is hot.

4) Because they get all the water they need from their food.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) sleep 2) easier 3) eyes

4) hearing 5) bad 6) at

7) see 8) dark

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Camels and donkeys are diurnal.

2) What problems do nocturnal animals have?

3) Owls have large eyes.

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Nocturnal animals sleep in the day but are awake at night. They hunt for prey or look for food when it is dark. They have a good sense of hearing. They can see well in the dark. It is better for them to hide from predators at night to hunt easily and safety.

Lesson (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Light pollution. 2) Yes, they do.

3) Cities, stores, houses and traffic.

4) What happens to the natural world when there's a lot of artificial light.

2) Read and complete.

1) rural 2) concrete 3) air 4) environment

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) plants and trees 2) plants

3) Carbon Dioxide

5) They help clean the air.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) researched 2) Cities 3) disappear

4) Plastic 5) hotter 6) absorb 7) Trees

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) I have researched what causes pollution.
2) Concrete and buildings can absorb heat.
3) What can you do to help?

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Did you know that plants and trees can help clean the air in busy cities and urban environments? Plants absorb carbon dioxide and they make oxygen. I have researched how we can create more green spaces in our cities and how this will create cleaner air in urban environments.

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Sparrow. 2) A noise.
3) Blackbird. 4) To be quiet.

2) Read and complete.

1) noise 2) birds 3) long 4) For

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) birds 2) deafening 3) for
4) loud 5) annoying 6) excited

4) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) The light in people's houses woke me up.
2) Can we get help?
3) What did Amira and her mom do?
4) The lights are strong and much brighter.

5) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

It was light. Birds were singing. We want to get help. Everyone was asleep. They turned off the lights. It became quiet and the lights in people's house woke me up. The noise woke him up. They sang loud so everyone can't sleep.

Exam on Unit (8)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Visitors.
2) Problems for our marine animals.
3) There are more lights at night.
Marine animals.

2) Read and complete.

1) relax 2) cool 3) habitats 4) trees

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) bedrooms 2) cold
3) Deir el-Medina. 4) 68.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1) F 2) F

B) Complete the following.

1) school 2) Granddad

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) exciting 2) won't
3) Can 4) Will

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1) Fennec foxes and owls are nocturnal.
2) Why are they raising money?

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

The community garden is a place where people can relax. There are many flowers and cool trees. It helps the environment stay clean and green. Volunteers come to water the plants and take care of them. It's a peaceful place, and everyone loves to spend time there.

أسئلة من امتحانات المحافظات على الوحدتين (7 - 8)

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1) enough 2) too 3) so that
4) much 5) feel 6) play
7) help 8) make 9) annoyed
10) exciting 11) make 12) help

Final Revision Answers

Unit (5)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Last Friday. 2) In England.
3) In a magazine. 4) Twelve years old.

- Listen and answer the questions.

1) Because she can do her favorite things.
2) In the mountains and the deserts.
3) She records a video.
4) To my grandparents.

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) Nile 2) father
3) house 4) senet

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) Luxor 2) birdwatching
3) tour guide 4) gorgeous

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) plane 2) ugly
3) Last summer. 4) A week.

- Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) A few 2) club
3) To enjoy the fresh air.
4) Swimming, fishing or sailing boats.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) swimming 2) spending 3) trees 4) putting
5) playing 6) doing 7) doesn't like
8) Do 9) doing 10) most
11) more 12) less 13) watching
14) more 15) the most 16) most
17) on 18) up 19) go

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) What activities do the children like?
2) Daniel likes a craft from Japan.
3) They love seeing our adventure.
4) Talia likes playing sports after school.
5) I don't like putting up a tent.
6) Swimming is the most popular activity.
7) What sports do you like doing?
8) My favorite hobby is birdwatching.
9) Do you like reading poems?

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Swimming is my favorite hobby. I go to the swimming pool every week with my friends. I also like playing football. I play football in the club on Fridays. I go hiking with my family. I use my free time wisely.

- Write an email of FIFTY (50) words.

To: Sara@yahoo.com
From: Toka@yahoo.com
Subject: A camping trip to the desert.

Dear Sara,

How are you? I miss you so much. Last week I went on a camping trip to the desert. I went with my family. I set up the tent. We went hiking on the trail. I had a wonderful time there.

See you soon,
Toka

Unit (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Port Said. 2) In a small town.
3) Some wonderful clothes. 4) By train.

- Listen and answer the questions.

1) Birds and animals in the zoo.
2) Very big. 3) The elephant.
4) Some bananas

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) Park 2) everything
3) garbage 4) something

- Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) cakes 2) expensive
3) delicious 4) buy

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) birds 2) Bedouins

3) To hunt rabbits for them to eat.

4) At weddings, parties and festivals.

- Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) walk 2) Paris

3) From many places in Paris.

4) The Mona Lisa.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) Everybody 2) anything 3) somebody
4) everybody 5) anybody 6) Everything
7) something 8) everything 9) something
10) anybody 11) everybody 12) everything
13) anything 14) somebody 15) nobody
16) anything 17) to play 18) to buy
19) to have

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Is there anything special you want to do?
2) Everything at the museum is old and important.
3) My favorite place is the sports center.
4) What did they see in the planetarium?
5) Burj Khalifa is made of steel.
6) When did they go on a boat trip?
7) There isn't anything in my school bag.
8) What do you like doing on vacation?
9) It is good to live in an oasis.

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Alexandria is a big city. It has a big old harbor. You can visit the Citadel of Qaitbay there. You can visit Alexandria Library. It's a modern building. You can swim in the sea and play on the beach. You can go to cinemas. The restaurants are amazing there.

- Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

The Egyptian Museum is in Tahrir Square, in Cairo. It's very big. You can see huge statues there. A lot of tourists like taking photos there. It's an amazing place. You can see gold objects, pots and several things from Ancient Egypt there.

Unit (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) By the sea.
2) He heard his mom go past his bedroom.
3) Awake.
4) Because they have a full moon.

- Listen and answer the questions.

1) He's a fisherman.
2) Because it's beautiful.
3) Late in the afternoon. 4) A boy.

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) gravity 2) Earth 3) water 4) tides

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) tides 2) sunscreen
3) parents 4) walk

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) tourism 2) Egypt
3) To encourage tourists to visit Egypt.
4) Warm and nice.

- Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) England 2) obey
3) He wanted to be treated like a normal person.
4) He was a great man.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) Don't 2) should 3) feel 4) have
5) too 6) enough 7) wear 8) so that
9) too 10) enough 11) enough
12) should 13) listen 14) don't drink
15) too 16) ask 17) feel
18) enough

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) How can the full moon affect our sleep?
2) What time do you go to bed?
3) What kind of breakfast should we eat?
4) How much water do you drink a day?
5) Where do you usually find leaflets?

6) King Canute was very fair.

7) He is a fisherman and lives near the sea.

8) It's dangerous to jump in shallow water.

9) Find a healthy balance of exercise and play.

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Find a healthy balance of play and exercise, healthy food, water, social time and good sleep. When you put together all these things, you can achieve everything you want. Put your phone away when you can enjoy the outside world with your family and friends. If you have healthy habits, you feel strong, happy, and have good relationships.

- Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

There are two things that cause the tides; the moon and the sun. The main effect is from the moon. When it moves around the earth, its gravity pulls the water on Earth towards it. This causes a high tide in the water nearest the moon. The tides happen every twelve hours. We should know about tides before we go to the sea to be safe.

Unit (8)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) A poster. 2) Volunteers.

3) Because people will notice the poster if it has photos.

4) Laila will look online and find pictures of beaches with garbage on.

- Listen and answer the questions.

1) Near the hot dry desert of North Africa.

2) The same color as sand.

3) When it is hot.

4) Because they get all water they need from their food.

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) nocturnal 2) developed

3) adapted 4) sense

- Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) Can 2) do 3) photos 4) will

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) flood 2) empty

3) It made it more fertile.

4) Flooding, growing and harvesting.

- Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) food 2) noise

3) To sleep.

4) Because there are more lights in cities and less darkness.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) 'll	2) won't	3) Will
4) can	5) get	6) won't
7) help	8) will	9) Will
10) won't	11) excited	12) tiring
13) annoyed	14) boring	15) annoying
16) tired	17) exciting	18) frightened
19) Will	20) Will	

5) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Some animals are diurnal.

2) Owls have large eyes.

3) Lots of desert animals are nocturnal.

4) The park looks amazing when it's clean.

5) The birds were not tired any more.

6) Concrete and buildings can absorb heat.

7) When does light pollution happen?

8) Nocturnal animals sleep in the day.

9) What happened to the turtle at the end?

6) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

We are going to have a concert next week. We want to raise money for a community garden. We need volunteers to help us. Students will sell different things to parents and friends. We will get help from all our friends.

- Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Light pollution is when there are artificial lights at night from houses, stores, offices and

traffic. This is a problem for nocturnal animals. There are fewer hours of darkness, and fewer places where animals can hide or look for food should protect the environment. We shouldn't throw garbage. We should make posters to encourage people to volunteer. We should also help children with special needs.

Exam (1)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Amir. 2) Reading.
3) Chocolate. 4) Beautiful pictures.

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) sea 2) turtle
3) flippers 4) rescue

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) Water 2) water
3) What we should eat and drink.
4) It hasn't got any fat or sugar.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Complete the following.

1) teacher 2) Alexandria

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) drink 2) is
3) run 4) open

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Can you help me make a picnic?
2) Let's jump in the water now.

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

My favourite sport is football. It's a popular game. We practise it in the club. We play with different teams. It makes us strong and we make new friends.

Exam (2)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Alexandria. 2) Sick.
3) By boat. 4) Four big fish.

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) tired 2) well
3) best 4) phones

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) shining 2) body clocks
3) Our body clocks think it's still daytime.
4) At 10 o'clock as usual.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Complete the following.

1) Alexandria. 2) wheelchair.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) writing 2) is
3) less popular 4) search

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The moon always goes around the earth.
2) There are not many people in the countryside.

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

My favorite sport is football. I play it with my friends twice a week. We have a small club where we meet and play together. It is so much fun! We run, kick the ball, and enjoy the game. Football makes me happy, and I love playing it!

Exam (3)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Birdwatching. 2) Ten years old.
3) A tour guide. 4) It's awesome.

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) main 2) moves
3) high 4) water

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) sleep 2) brain
3) It sleeps, its eyes one open.
4) About 10 or 12 hours.



4) The Reader.

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) F 2) T

B) Complete the following.

1) proud 2) teach

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) feel 2) strong

3) don't 4) anything

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Can you lend me some money?

2) Uncle Wael drove to the trail.

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

One day, I went out with my friends to play football. Football is a popular sport, and we love it! We went to the club to practice. We made two teams and played together. It was fun, and we felt strong. We all enjoyed the day out playing football.

Exam (4)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Yes, they are important.

2) We must have balance of play, exercise, food and sleep.

3) We should keep ourselves away from bad habits.

4) They should include everything in our daily life.

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) farm 2) helped

3) game 4) popular

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) port 2) read

3) Last week.

4) To protect the city.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Complete the following.

1) fig 2) train

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) anything 2) have

3) more 4) enough

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) My favorite hobby is birdwatching.

2) How much water do you drink?

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

In my free time, I love to play football with friends. Sometimes, I go hiking in the hills or enjoy a picnic with my family. I also like drawing pictures and doing arts and crafts. Camping is another fun activity where I relax and enjoy nature with loved ones.

Exam (5)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Traveling.

2) To places which his never been to.

3) Nature. 4) Hiking and camping.

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) poems 2) When

3) hobbies 4) posters

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) tell the truth 2) young

3) To the hospital. 4) It refers to Ali.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Complete the following.

1) Granddad 2) Granddad's village

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) something 2) playing

3) amazing 4) use

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) What do you know about Alexandria?

2) Marwan couldn't get to sleep.

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

There were many activities in Ancient Egypt. They liked archery. They played a lot of sports. They watched a chariot race. They liked boxing, wrestling and a board game. They go fishing and hunting, too.

Exam (6)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Sharm El-Sheikh. 2) By boat.

3) Sick. 4) We tried snorkeling.

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) wide awake 2) sun

3) nocturnal 4) day

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) People 2) wolf

3) She put him into a room and shut the door.

4) Face your problem and then ask for help.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Complete the following.

1) trees

2) Granddad's village

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) have 2) amazing

3) enough 4) will

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) What do you put in your backpack?

2) Camels and donkeys are diurnal animals.

7) Write an email of FIFTY (50) words.

To: Samy@yahoo.com

From: Ali@yahoo.com

Subject: What I like doing in my free time.

Dear Samy,

How are you? I'd like to tell you about what I like doing in my free time. I like hiking with my family. I also like snorkeling. I go to the Red Sea to snorkel. I like planting trees in our garden

See you soon,

Ali

Exam (7)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Because they are nocturnal.

2) They sleep in the day but they are awake at night.

3) They hunt their preys or look for food.

4) Camels and donkeys.

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) gravity 2) high 3) tides 4) Earth

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) milk or lemon 2) close to

3) He boiled his drinking water near a bush.

4) In the morning at breakfast.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Complete the following.

1) Granddad's village

2) a wheel chair

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) tiring 2) anybody

3) Will 4) too

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) There isn't enough water in my bottle.

2) Would you like to go camping?

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Alexandria is an important and famous city. It has the oldest and most important harbor in Egypt. You can visit Bibliotheca Alexandrina the modern building which has more than 4,000,000 books. You can also visit the aquarium and the Roman amphitheater. It has amazing beaches, too.

Exam (8)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) To the park. 2) Her friends. 3) Games.

4) Because there's always something to see or do.

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) activities 2) board 3) play 4) senet

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) cages 2) elephants

3) On a school trip to the zoo in Giza.

4) Because they give them bread and bananas.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Complete the following.

1) dad has a new job in Alexandria.

2) teacher.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) having 2) get

3) annoyed 4) anything

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) I'll buy some bread for my mother.

2) If you feel too hot, open the window.

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Find a healthy balance of play and exercise, healthy food, water, social time and enough sleep. When you put together all these things, you can do your best and achieve everything you want. Enjoy the outside world with your family and friends. If you have healthy habits you feel strong.

Exam (9)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) It's a big square building.

2) Stone. 3) Tall round towers.

4) To protect the city.

2) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1) Alexandria 2) photography

3) wonderful 4) taking

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) doesn't work 2) living room

3) In Luxor. 4) Five.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) F 2) T

B) Complete the following.

1) trip. 2) Waleed

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) anybody 2) don't sleep

3) annoying 4) enough

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) I enjoy spending my free time outside.

2) How many Bedouin people are there in the world?

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Some animals are diurnal, which means they are wide awake in the day not at night. Lots of desert animals are nocturnal. They sleep in the day when it's too hot to look for food. Diurnal animals are camels and donkeys. Nocturnal animals are rats and fennec foxes.

Exam (10)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Outside. 2) In summer.

3) It can change very fast.

4) We go skiing down the mountains.

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) Luxor 2) train 3) Kings 4) amazing

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) Tom 2) Sphinx

3) The Egyptian Museum and Cairo Tower.

4) Taking photographs of our monuments.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) F 2) T

B) Complete the following.

1) Fares 2) school

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) anything 2) watching

3) are 4) least

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The full moon is very bright in the sky.

2) What did they see in the planetarium?

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

I like to do many things in my free time. I like watching TV with my family. I also like playing sports with my friends in the club. I enjoy playing computer games with my cousins every Friday. I like painting, too.

Exam (11)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Last week.

2) In a small village between Alexandria and Cairo.

3) A very important harbor.

4) To protect the city.

2) Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

1) free 2) picnic

3) rains 4) indoors

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) holiday 2) slowly

3) To breathe under water.

4) Colorful fish and beautiful sea plants.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) F 2) T

B) Complete the following.

1) friend 2) excited

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) enough 2) go

3) sleeping 4) excited

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) Do you enjoy spending time outside?

2) King Canute was very good and fair.

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Khan El-Khalili is a very famous market in Old Cairo. It's my favorite place for shopping. I can buy many things there. You can find special gifts there like pots and artifacts. Tourists like going there very much.

Exam (12)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) In Alexandria.

2) Over 4 million books.

3) A museum and a planetarium.

4) Stars and planets.

2) Read and complete the text with words from the box.

1) loved 2) great

3) servants 4) throne

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) nocturnal 2) at night

3) They are awake in the day.

4) They hunt for their prey or look for food.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) F

B) Complete the following.

1) Alexandria. 2) the garden.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) boring 2) somebody

3) enough 4) wear

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) What will the volunteers do at the beach?

2) My favorite place is the café.

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

At the weekend, I like doing many things. Sometimes I go to the park with my family to have a picnic there. We also like going to the



beach in hot weather to have fun and swim in the sea. My favorite thing which I like to do most, is playing football.

Exam (13)

1) Listen and answer the questions.

1) Because I'm busy with my school work.
2) I do arts and crafts.
3) To use paper to make shapes of animals.
4) It's not very popular in Colombia.

2) Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

1) Sharm El-Sheikh 2) How
3) enjoy 4) Snorkeling

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1) place 2) boring
3) Because of its fine weather and beautiful places.
4) From all over the world.

4) The Reader.

A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1) T 2) T

B) Complete the following.

1) beautiful. 2) the fig tree.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) got 2) to win
3) shouldn't 4) won't forget

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1) The moons' gravity affects the tides.
2) How many children are visiting the museum?

7) Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words.

Helping the community is our responsibility. We should help each other and volunteer to make our community a better place. We should protect the environment. We shouldn't throw garbage. We should make posters to encourage people to volunteer. We should also help children with special needs.

